

Owner's Manual

Audi TT Coupé

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. We recommend that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

In addition to this Owner's Manual, the Service Wallet also includes the quick reference guide and the Service Schedule.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring with your Audi.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the front passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 210*.

152.561.8FV.20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes on this Owner's Manual .. 5

Controls and displays 6
View of cockpit 6
Controls at a glance 6

Instruments and warning/ indicator lamps 8
Instruments 8
Warning and indicator lamps 9

Driver information system 18
Overview 18
Multi-function steering wheel with arrow buttons 19
Multi-function steering wheel with MODE button 21
Rev counter 21
Mileage recorder 22
On-board computer 22
Camera-based traffic sign recognition 23

Setting off 25
Doors and windows 25
Central locking system 25
Boot lid 32
Electric windows 33
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 34

Lights and vision 37
Exterior lights 37
Interior lights 40
Clear vision 41
Windscreen wipers 42
Digital compass 44

Seats and storage 46
General notes 46
Front seats 46
Rear seat bench 47
Ashtray 48
Cigarette lighter and electrical socket 48
Storage 49
Luggage compartment 50
Roof carrier 52

Heating and cooling 53
Air conditioner 53

Driving 58
General notes 58
Steering 60
Starting and stopping the engine 60
Start/stop system 63
Electro-mechanical parking brake 66
Kick-down feature 69

Automatic gearbox 70
S tronic 70

Driver assistance 80
Driver assist systems 80
Speed warning function 80
Cruise control system 80
Speed limiter 82
Audi active lane assist (lane departure warning feature) 84
Audi side assist (lane change assist feature) 87
Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions) 90

Parking aids 93
General notes 93
Rear parking aid 93
Parking system plus 94
Park assist with 360° display 95
Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps 100
Fault warnings 100

Intelligent technology 101
Electro-mechanical power steering 101
Brakes 101
Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 102
Four-wheel drive (quattro) 105
Rear spoiler 105
Power management 106
Information saved in the control units 107

Infotainment 109
Multi Media Interface 109
Introduction 109
Switching the MMI on/off 109
How to use the system 109
MMI touch 111
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function . 112

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speller for letters/numbers 113
Searching 114

Speech dialogue system 116
How to use the system 115
Notes on the command overviews 117
Commands 117

Telephone 123
Introduction 123
Connecting a telephone 123
Using the telephone 127
Favourites 129
Messages 130
Listening to voicemail messages 131
Emergency call functions 131
Directory 131
Other settings 134
Troubleshooting 136

Audi connect 137
Introduction 137
Setting up 137
Configuring using myAudi 139
An overview of Audi connect services 140
Wi-Fi hotspot 143
Configuring the data connection 144
Notes on Audi connect 145
Troubleshooting 146

Navigation 147
Calling up the navigation menu 147
Entering a destination 148
Stopping route guidance 152
Adding a home address 153
Adding favourites 153
Adding directory contacts 153
Other settings 153
Map 156
Google Earth map display 159
Calling up traffic information 160
Troubleshooting 162

Listening to the radio 163
Calling up the radio 163
Radio functions 163
Radio menu 165
Favourites 165
Other settings 166
Troubleshooting 167

Media 168
Introduction 168
Notes 168
Media drives 169
Bluetooth audio player 171
Wi-Fi audio players 172
Online media 173
Multimedia connections 174
Supported media and file formats 177
Playing media 179
Other settings 183
Troubleshooting 184

System settings 186
Setting the date and time 186
MMI settings 186
Connection manager 187
System update 189
On-board handbook 189
Sound settings 190
Volume settings 190
Restarting the MMI system (Reset) 191
Notes on software licences 191

Safety 192
Safe driving 192
General notes 192
Correct sitting positions 193
Child seats 195
Securing a child seat 198
Pedal area 200
Stowing luggage safely 201
Pedestrian protection system 202

Seat belts 204
Why is it so important to use seat belts? . 204
Forces acting in a collision 205
How to wear seat belts properly 206
Belt tensioners 208

Airbag system 209
Description of airbag system 209
Front airbags 210
Side airbags 214
Head-protection airbags 215

152.561.8FV.20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service and care 217
Checking and topping up fluids . 217
Fuel 217
Filling the tank 218
Emission control systems 220
Engine compartment 220
Engine oil 223
Cooling system 224
Brake fluid 226
Battery 226
Windscreen washer 229
Service interval display 229

Wheels and tyres 231
Wheels 231
Tyre pressure loss indicator 234

Care of vehicle and cleaning 236
General notes 236
Washing the vehicle 236
Notes on cleaning and care 237
Taking the vehicle out of service 240

Self-help 241
Mobility 241
General notes 241
Equipment 241
Tyre repair kit 242
Changing a wheel 244
Spare wheel 247
Jump-starting 248
Tow-starting / towing away 250

Fuses and bulbs 254
Fuses 254
Bulbs 256

Technical data and accessories . . 257
Technical data 257
Vehicle identification data 257
Dimensions 257
Capacities 258
Explanation of technical data 258
Petrol engines 259
Diesel engine 259

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle 260
Accessories, replacement parts and repairs 260
Modifications 260
Radio transmitters and business equipment 261
Component protection 261
Environmental compatibility 262

Index 263

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This Owner's Manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings.

Please ensure that this Owner's Manual is always kept in the vehicle. It should always be available to anyone else driving the vehicle, i.e. anyone renting, borrowing or buying the vehicle from you.

This manual describes **the equipment available for the vehicle at the time of going to print**. Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or may only be available in certain markets.

Some sections of this Owner's Manual do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e. g. “Applies to vehicles: with bi-xenon headlights”. This optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also marked with an asterisk “*”.

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

At the beginning of this Owner's Manual, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order in which they appear. An **alphabetical index** is included at the end of the Owner's Manual.

All references to **positions** such as “left”, “right”, “front” or “rear” are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

⇨ ⚠ Refers to a “WARNING” within the same section. If the WARNING symbol is followed by a page number the warning text referred to is included in a different section.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

152.561.8FV.20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

View of cockpit

Controls at a glance

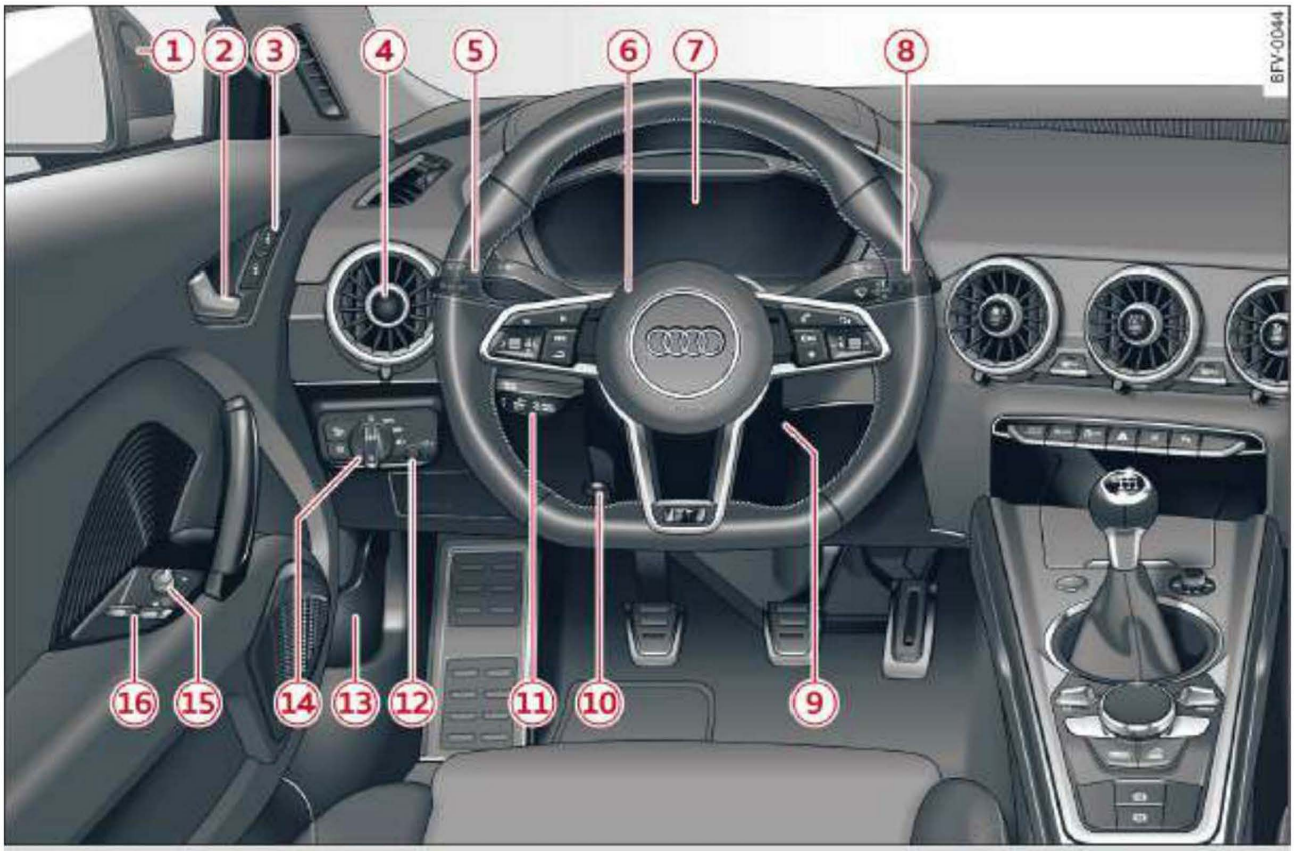


Fig. 1 Front cabin: Left side

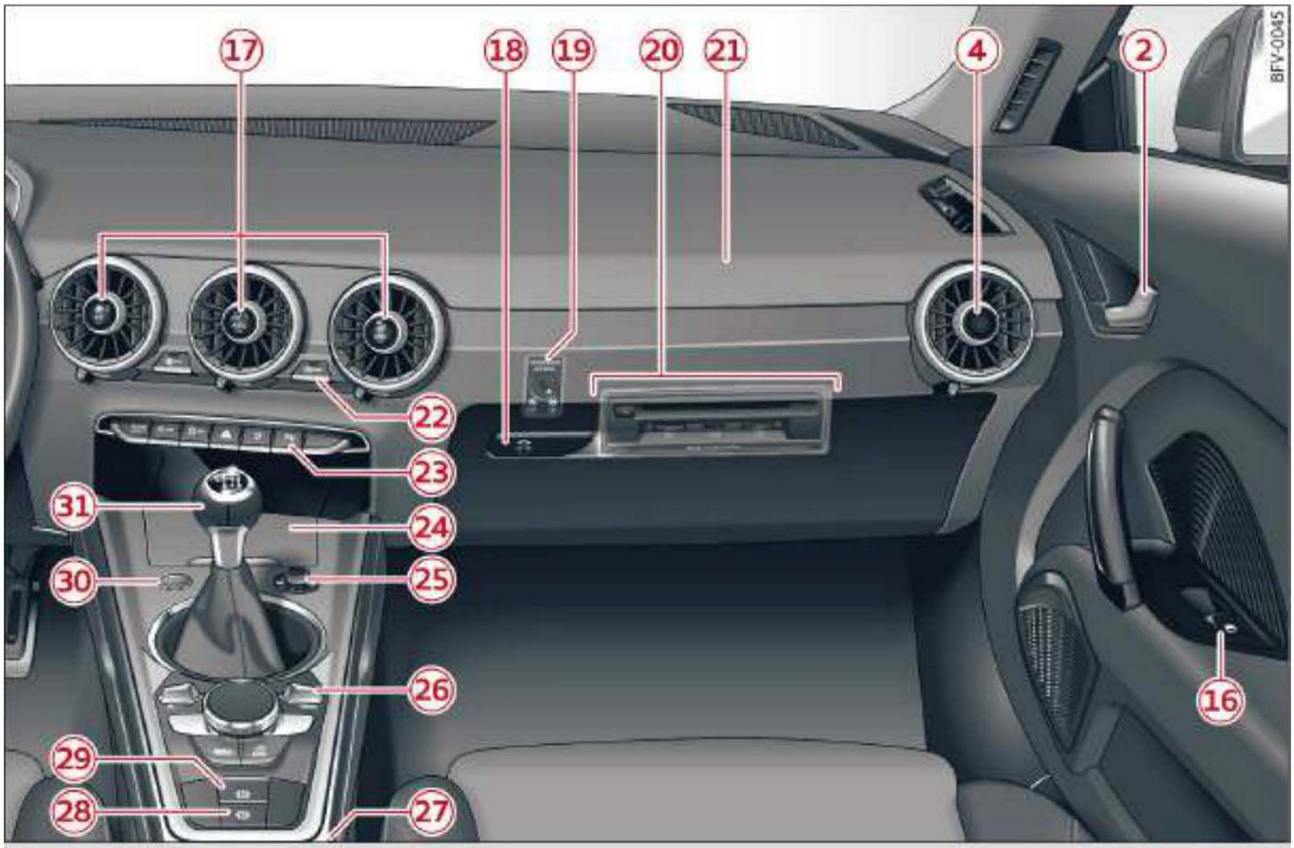


Fig. 2 Front cabin: Right side

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(1) Side assist warning lamp 87
(2) Door handle
(3) Central locking switch 29
(4) Air outlet with control for seat heating
(5) Control lever for:
– Turn signals and main beam headlights 38
– Main beam assist 38
– Active lane assist 84
(6) Multi-function steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 212
– Controls for virtual instrument cluster including driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation system and speech dialogue system
– Paddle levers 75
(7) Instrument cluster 8
(8) Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer 42
(9) Starting the engine after a malfunction 63
(10) Adjustable steering column 60
(11) Control lever for cruise control system 80
(12) Instrument lighting 41
(13) Bonnet lock release 220
(14) Light switch 37
(15) Electric adjuster for exterior mirrors 41
(16) Electric windows 33
(17) Air outlet with control for air conditioner 53
(18) Lockable glove box 49
(19) Deactivating front passenger's airbag 211
(20) Drives for CD, DVD and SIM/SD cards 169
(21) Front passenger's airbag 210
(22) Switch for rear window heating
(23) Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– Drive select 90
– Start/stop system 63
– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 102
– Hazard warning lights 40
– Automatic rear spoiler 105
– Park assist 95
(24) Centre console with optional equipment:
– Storage compartment with AUX input/USB charging socket 176
– Multimedia box for mobile phone .. 175
– Audi phone box 125
(25) ON/OFF button for sound system
(26) Infotainment control console
(27) Depending on equipment fitted:
– Storage compartment
– Ashtray 48
– Cup holder 49
(28) Hold assist 68
(29) Parking brake 66
(30) START ENGINE STOP button ... 60
(31) Depending on equipment fitted:
– Selector lever (S tronic) or 70
– Gear lever (on vehicles with manual gearbox)

Note

– Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
– The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ *page 6*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

152.561.8FV.20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments and warning/indicator lamps

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the driver's information centre.



Fig. 3 Overview of instrument cluster

① Coolant temperature gauge 8
② Driver information system 18
③ Fuel gauge 9
④ Reset button for trip recorder . . . 22

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 8, Fig. 3* ① only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the left-hand range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Normal temperature

In normal operation the LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. The LEDs may also extend further into the right-hand range of the display when the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern provided the warning lamp ■ does not light up on the infotainment display. If the red LEDs reach the right-hand part of the display and the warning lamp ■ appears in the display, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 12*.

CAUTION

– Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
– The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Obtain professional assistance.

Note

Diesel engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel gauge

The gauge ③ only works when the ignition is switched on. If there is less than 7 litres of fuel in the tank, the LED at the bottom of the dial will light up in red and the indicator lamp will appear ⇨ *page 16*. The LED at the bottom of the dial will flash in red if the fuel level is very low.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇨ *page 258*.

CAUTION

Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. Unburnt fuel can then enter the exhaust system. This can lead to overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages on the display can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the display tab for warning/indicator lamps and messages ⇨ *page 18*. If several malfunctions have occurred, you can use the thumbwheel to scroll through them on the display.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

Overview

When you switch on the ignition, some of the warning and indicator lamps light up briefly to show that the associated systems are working properly. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these warning/indicator lamps does not light up, there is a fault in the associated system.

Red warning lamps

	Brake system ⇨ *page 11*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 12*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 12*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 13*
	Front seat belt ⇨ *page 13*
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇨ *page 101*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Central warning/indicator lamp ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 13*
	Gearbox malfunction ⇨ *page 77*
	Rear spoiler ✓ ⇨ *page 105*

Yellow indicator lamps

	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
OFF	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
ABS	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 14*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Tyre pressure loss indicator ✓ ⇨ *page 234*
	Tyre pressure loss indicator ⇨ *page 234*
	Engine management ✓ ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine management system (diesel engines) ✓ ⇨ *page 15*
	Emission control system ⇨ *page 15*
	Diesel particulate filter* ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine speed governing ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 16*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 13*
	Fuel tank system ⇨ *page 16*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 16*
	Windscreen wipers ⇨ *page 16*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 62*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 27*
	Bulb monitor* ⇨ *page 16*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 17*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 17*
	Light sensor/rain sensor* ⇨ *page 17*

	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 85*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 77*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 13*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 13*
	Central warning/indicator lamp ⇨ *page 13*
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇨ *page 101*
	Suspension control* ⇨ *page 17*
	Rear spoiler ✓ ⇨ *page 105*
	Speed warning function* ⇨ *page 80*
	Electro-mechanical power steering ⇨ *page 101*

Further indicator lamps

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 17*
	Cruise control system* ⇨ *page 80*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 85*
	Hold assist* ⇨ *page 68*
	Speed limiter* ⇨ *page 82*
	Start/stop system* ⇨ *page 63*
	Start/stop system* ⇨ *page 63*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 63*
	Park assist* ⇨ *page 95*
	Park assist* ⇨ *page 95*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 85*
	Audi side assist* ⇨ *page 89*
	Gearbox ⇨ *page 77*
	Electro-mechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 11*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition* ⇨ *page 23*
	Rear seat belt ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Rear seat belt ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Main beam assist* ⇨ *page 38*
	Speed limiter* ⇨ *page 83*
	Main beam headlights ⇨ *page 38*, ⇨ *page 38*

Brake system

If the warning lamp lights up, there is a fault in the brake system.

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.

Warning! Brake servo inoperative

You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails. Obtain professional assistance.

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

If the ABS indicator lamp and ESC indicator lamp light up together with the brake warning lamp and this driver message appears, the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Parking brake: fault. See owner's manual

– If the warning lamp and the message appear **after you switch on the ignition when the vehicle is stationary**, please check whether you can release the parking brake. If the parking brake cannot be released you should obtain professional assistance. If the parking brake can be released but the warning lamp/message still appears, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.
– If the warning lamp and the message appear **while driving**, there may be a malfunction in the parking brake auto release or the emergency brake functions. You may not be able to apply or release the parking brake. Do not park the car on a gradient. Obtain professional assistance.

WARNING

– Before opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level, observe the warning information on ⇨ *page 220, Working on components in the engine compartment*.
– If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low - this may cause an increased accident risk. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
– If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the tail of the vehicle to skid sideways. Drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Electro-mechanical parking brake

The warning lamp lights up when the parking brake is applied.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the warning lamp flashes and the message appears, the brake may not be strong enough to ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hold the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle can roll away, even on a gentle slope.

Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and simultaneously press the switch (P) (alternatively, use the auto release function ⇨ *page 67, Driving away from a standstill*).

Parking brake: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Hold assist: only available when door is closed and engine is running

If this message appears, make sure that the door is closed, the seat belt is buckled and the engine is running.

Hold assist: unavailable

If this message appears, the system requirements have not been met.

Please release parking brake

If this message appears, release the parking brake.

Parking brake auto release: unavailable

If this message appears, press the brake pedal and then release the parking brake.

Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

If the warning lamp flashes and the message appears, the brake may not be strong enough to hold the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle can roll away, even on a gentle slope.

Parking brake is applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal and then release the parking brake as necessary.

Note

For further information on the parking brake refer to ⇨ *page 66*.

/ Cooling system

Switch off engine and check coolant level

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 224*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇨ *page 225*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
– If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a malfunction of the radiator fan. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes.

WARNING

– Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 220, Working on components in the engine compartment*.

CAUTION

Do not drive on if the warning lamp lights up; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

Engine oil pressure

Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇨*page 223*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨*page 224*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

– If the engine oil level is OK and the warning lamp is flashing, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Note

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

Alternator / battery

Electrical system: fault. Battery is not being charged.

There is an alternator fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. Avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary (such as the radio) because this will drain the battery. If the battery charge is insufficient, obtain professional assistance.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Please activate drive system

Starting reliability may be impaired.

If this message disappears after a while, the battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.

If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Front seat belt

The warning lamp lights up and does not go out until the driver's and front passenger's* seat belts have been fastened. When the vehicle has gathered speed you will also hear a warning chime.

Note

For further information on the seat belts ⇨*page 204*.

Steering lock

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on.

Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock - risk of accident!

Central warning/indicator lamp

If the warning lamp or indicator lamp lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Engine start system

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) and anti-lock brake system

If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC or traction control system (ASR) is intervening.

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. In this case, the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC sport mode has been activated via the OFF button ⇨ *page 104*. You can switch the ESC system back on by pressing the OFF button again.

Stabilisation control (ESC): switched off. Warning! Restricted stability

If the indicator lamp lights up, the ESC system has been partially or completely switched off via the OFF button ⇨ *page 104*. In addition, **ESC OFF** will appear. You can switch the ESC system back on by pressing the OFF button again.

The system is activated when you switch on the ignition. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

Stabilisation control (ESC): fault! See owner's manual

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

ABS: fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp and the ABS indicator lamp light up and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the anti-lock brake system or electronic differential lock. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Note

For more information about the ESC and ABS systems, refer to ⇨ *page 102*.

Brake pads

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the brake pads checked.

Safety systems

The indicator lamp monitors the safety systems and the pedestrian protection system.

Safety system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, there is a malfunction in one of the safety systems.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Pedestrian protection system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes and the bonnet is in a raised position, the pedestrian protection system has been triggered. Please refer to ⇨ *page 202, Pedestrian protection system*.

WARNING

Have the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise they may fail to trigger in an ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Engine management

Applies to vehicles: with petrol engine

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine checked.

Engine management (diesel engine)

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

If the indicator lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on, the glow plugs are preheating.

If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is moving, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Emission control system

If the indicator lamp lights up or flashes, a fault has occurred which can reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine and diesel particulate filter

Particulate filter: fault. See owner's manual

The diesel particulate filter requires regeneration. You can assist the self-cleaning function of the filter by driving as follows:

Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h for about 15 minutes in 4th or 5th gear, or with the selector lever in position S on vehicles with automatic gearbox. Keep the engine speed at about 2000 rpm. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off. The indicator lamp will go out once the cleaning process has been completed successfully.

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommended driving speed must never lead to the driver disregarding the traffic regulations.

Note

For more information about the diesel particulate filter, refer to ⇨ *page 220*.

Engine speed governing

Applies to vehicles: with engine speed governing

Max. engine speed XXXX rpm

The engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the driver information system. This protects the engine from overheating.

The rev limiter is deactivated as soon as the engine temperature is no longer within the critical range and you have taken your foot off the accelerator.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp EPC will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine oil level (min.)

Please check oil level

You can continue driving for the time being but you should check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 223*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 224*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the engine oil level is normal but the indicator lamp stays on, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and avoid high engine speeds.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Fuel tank system (petrol/diesel)

Applies to vehicles: with petrol or diesel engine, without natural gas engine

Please refuel

When the indicator lamp lights up for the first time and the message appears, there are still about 7 litres of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Drive to a filling station without delay.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears:

– there is a malfunction in the tank system, or
– on vehicles with a diesel engine, water may have collected in the fuel filter.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If poor-quality diesel fuel is used, it may be necessary to have the water separator[1)] on the **fuel filter** drained more frequently than is specified in the Service Schedule. This helps to prevent potential engine faults.

For the sake of the environment

Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

Note

For more information about filling the tank, refer to ⇨ *page 218*.

Washer fluid level

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 229*.

Windscreen wipers

Windscreen wipers: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the windscreen wipers.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Bulb monitor

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

You should have the bulb replaced without delay.

Vehicle lights: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a fault with the headlights or light switch. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
– Incorrect handling of the high-voltage element of xenon gas-discharge bulbs* can have potentially fatal consequences.

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlight range control

Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the adaptive light. The dipped beam headlights will still be working normally.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Light sensor / rain sensor

Applies to vehicles: with light sensor/ rain sensor

Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual

Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action.

For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the light switch is set to the **AUTO** position. You can still switch the lights on and off in the normal way with the light switch. You can also continue to use all the other wiper functions that do not use the rain sensor.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Suspension control

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

Suspension: fault. You can continue driving

There is a malfunction in the suspension control system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Turn signals and hazard warning lights

If the indicator lamp or flashes, the turn signals are on. If both indicator lamps flash, the hazard warning lights are on.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. You should have the bulb replaced without delay.

Rear seat belt

Applies to vehicles: with seat belt warning system (rear)

The warning lamp / lights up briefly when the ignition is switched on.

If a rear seat belt is buckled/unbuckled, the corresponding indicator lamp lights up briefly.

- If the indicator lamp lights up briefly, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied or the seat belt is not buckled. If the seat belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is moving, you will also hear a warning tone.

- If the indicator lamp lights up briefly, the seat belt has been fastened.

Note

For further information on the seat belts ⇨ *page 204*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver information system

Overview

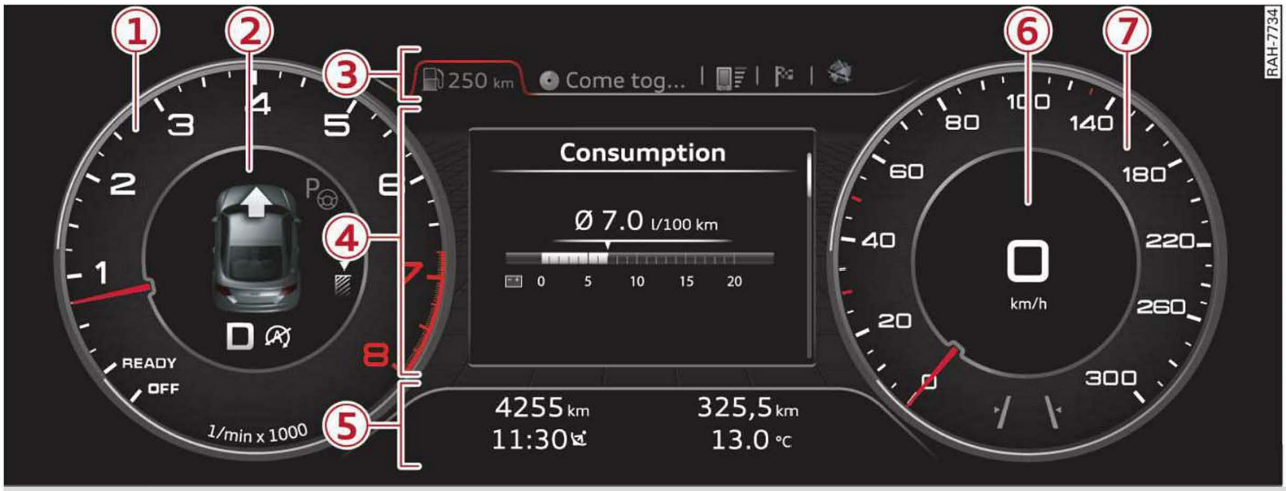


Fig. 4 Driver information system: Classic view

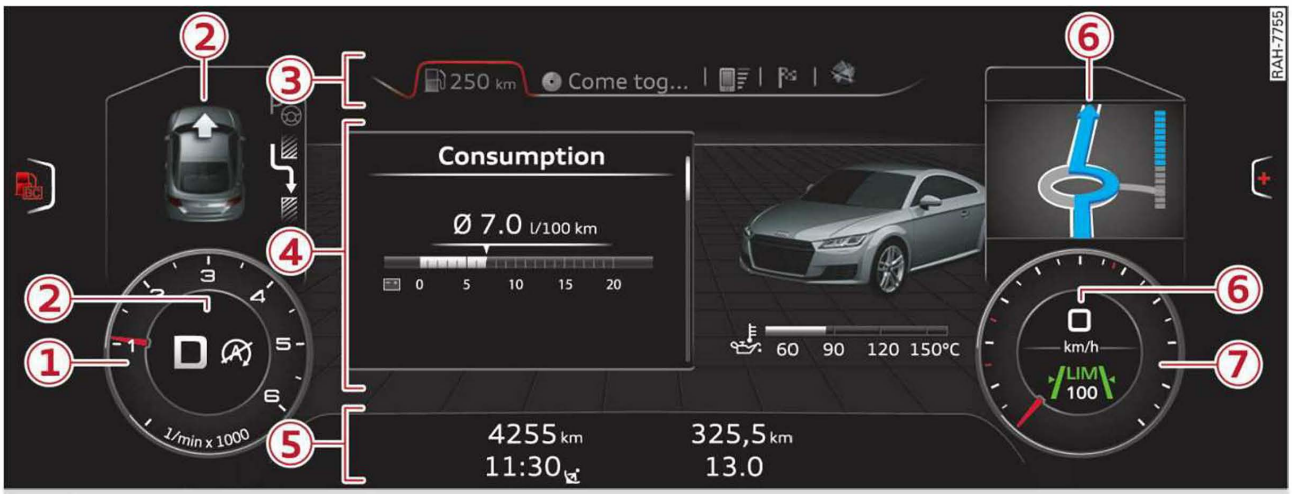


Fig. 5 Driver information system: Extended view

The driver information system displays various components:

1. Rev counter
2. Secondary display on left (two separate sections in extended view)
3. Tab area
4. Central area
5. Status line (displayed on one or two lines)
6. Secondary display on right (two separate sections in extended view)
7. Speedometer

WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 ℃ – risk of accident!

Note

- You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system.
- When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.
- At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-function steering wheel with arrow buttons

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

You can use the multi-function steering wheel to control the driver information system and MMI functions, adjust the volume and switch the speech dialogue system on/off.*



Fig. 6 Infotainment display view

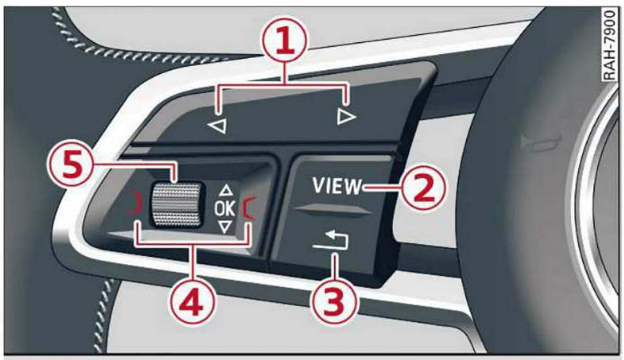


Fig. 7 How to use multi-function steering wheel

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

① ◁▷ button

– **To switch between tabs**: Press the left/right side of the ◁▷ button (e.g. to call up radio functions).

The driver information system shows information Ⓑ in several display tabs Ⓐ.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Vehicle
2nd tab[a)]	Warnings
3rd tab	Radio ⇨ *page 163* Media ⇨ *page 168*
4th tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 123*
5th tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 147* Map*
6th tab[b)]	Sound ⇨ *page 186* Audi connect ⇨ *page 137* Settings

a) This tab is only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed or if the relevant system is switched on.

b) The tab contents depend on which menu you used last.

② VIEW button

– **To change views**: Press the VIEW button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 18, Fig. 4* to the extended view ⇨ *page 18, Fig. 5*.

③ ⮌ button

– **To return to the previous function level**: Press the ⮌ button.

④ Control buttons

– **To call up the selection menu**: Press the left control button.
– **To call up the options menu**: Press the right control button.

⑤ Left thumbwheel

– **To select a function**: Scroll the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (e.g. to select a radio station).
– **To confirm your selection**: Press the left thumbwheel (e.g. to tune to the radio station).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Control buttons



Fig. 8 Calling up the selection menu and options menu

Left control button

– **To call up the selection menu**: Press the left control button ⇨ *Fig. 8*. You can now use the left thumbwheel to select and confirm a function in the selection menu (e.g. to select a new waveband).

Right control button

– **To call up the options menu**: Press the right control button ⇨ *Fig. 8*. You can now use the left thumbwheel in the options menu to select context-sensitive functions or change certain settings (e.g. sound settings).

Direct selection buttons

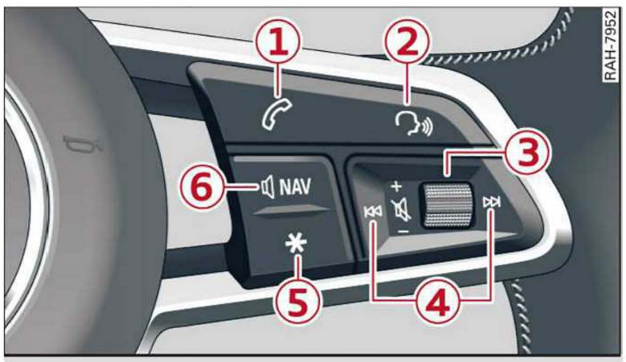


Fig. 9 Right side of multi-function steering wheel

① button

– **To answer a call**: Press the button when there is an incoming call.
– **To end a call**: Press the button during a call.
– **To display the call list**: Press the button while no calls are active and there are no incoming calls.

② button

– **To switch on the speech dialogue system**: Briefly press the button. Give a spoken command after the **beep** signal.
– **To switch off the speech dialogue system**: Press and hold the button for several seconds. **Or**: Say the command **CANCEL**.

For more information about the speech dialogue system, refer to ⇨ *page 116, Speech dialogue system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

– **Volume up/down**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down.
– **Mute/pause**: Scroll the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmute/resume**: Scroll the right thumbwheel upwards. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.

④ button

– **To select the previous/next track or station**: Press the or button.
– **To fast forward/rewind an audio file**: Press and hold the or button until the desired playing position has been reached.

⑤ button

– **To call up the user-assigned function**: Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
– **To check which function is assigned**: Press and hold the button.
– **To change the assigned function**: Select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⑥ NAV button

– **To have the last navigation cue repeated**: Press the NAV button while route guidance is active.
– **To adjust the volume of the navigation cues**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down during route guidance while a navigation cue is being spoken.

Multi-function steering wheel with MODE button

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function steering wheel

You can use the multi-function steering wheel to control the driver information system and MMI functions and adjust the volume.



Fig. 10 Multi-function steering wheel (standard version)

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

① How to use the driver information system

The driver information system shows information Ⓑ in several display tabs Ⓐ.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following tabs are available:

1st tab	Vehicle
2nd tab[a)]	Warnings
3rd tab	Radio ⇨ *page 163* Media ⇨ *page 168*
4th tab	Sound ⇨ *page 186* Settings

a) This tab is only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed or if the relevant system is switched on.

– MODE: Press the MODE button until the desired tab is displayed.
– Scroll the left thumbwheel to select the desired function.
– Press the left thumbwheel to confirm your selection.
– Scroll the left thumbwheel rapidly to scroll through a list.

② VIEW button

To change views: Press the VIEW button to switch from the classic view ⇨ *page 18, Fig. 4* to the extended view ⇨ *page 18, Fig. 5*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a traffic announcement) directly while it is being played.

– **Volume up/down**: Scroll the right thumbwheel up/down.
– **Mute/pause**: Scroll the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmute/resume**: Scroll the right thumbwheel upwards. **Or**: Press the right thumbwheel.

Rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute.

The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

CAUTION

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mileage recorder



Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: Mileage recorder and reset button

The mileage is stated in kilometres (“km”) or miles. You can switch the display from kilometres to miles and vice versa via the infotainment system.

Right mileage recorder

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The last digit of the trip recorder indicates distances of 100 metres or tenths of a mile.

The trip recorder can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button .

Left mileage recorder

The odometer on the left records the vehicle's total mileage.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instruments, the letters **DEF** appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible.

On-board computer

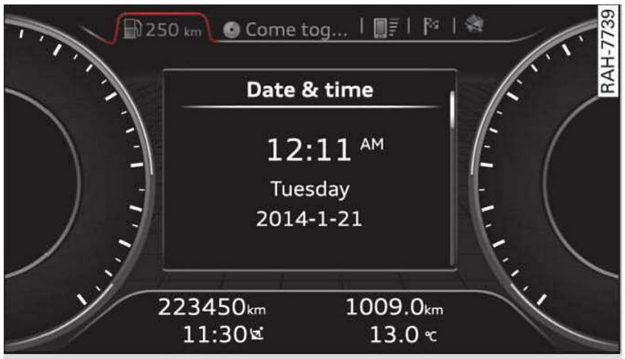


Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: Time and date display



Fig. 13 Instrument cluster: Consumption display

You can call up the following information sequentially on the on-board computer:

– Time & date ⇨ *page 186*
– Average fuel consumption (ltr./100 km)
– Single journey memory summary
– Total journey memory summary

The single journey memory processes the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the single journey memory, the total journey memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown in a bar display ⇨ *Fig. 13*. The average fuel consumption (ltr./100 km) from the single journey memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving fuel using one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: Electrical energy can be stored in the battery (recuperation) if the vehicle is travelling downhill or coasting in gear (overrun). In this case, the bar will move towards the symbol.
– **Coasting mode*** ⇨ *page 75*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to vehicles: with camera-based traffic sign recognition



Fig. 14 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition (example)

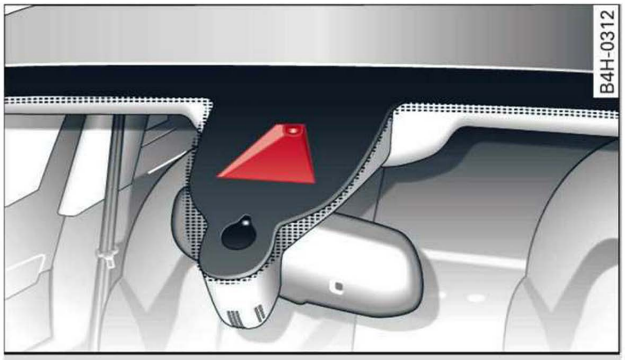


Fig. 15 Windscreen: Camera window for traffic sign recognition

Traffic signs detected by the camera appear in the infotainment display to keep you informed of current speed restrictions and no-overtaking zones. In cases where the system is able to detect temporary speed limits applicable in wet weather or at certain times of day ⇨ *Fig. 14* it will also display these traffic restrictions.

General notes

The traffic sign recognition system can detect standardised speed limit signs within the camera's range of vision. It makes use of the navigation data to evaluate the detected speed limits and show them on the display. Under certain conditions, the system will also display the legal speed limits on roads without speed limit signs.

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries. For a current list, see the Internet (e.g. www.audi.com). The system is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
– In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
– At high speeds.
– If the camera's range of vision ⇨ *Fig. 15* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 236*.
– If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
– If traffic signs deviate from the standard appearance (round with red border).
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
– If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
– If traffic signs or routes have changed (navigation data out of date).

Some types of slow moving vehicles (such as heavy goods vehicles) carry speed stickers which, if detected by the system, may affect the display.

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using traffic sign recognition. The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

– Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.
– The traffic sign recognition system does not warn you if you exceed the speed limit and does not alter the speed of your vehicle to obey the speed limit.
– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster (e.g. **50**) may apply in mph or km/h, depending on the units applicable in a particular country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls

Applies to vehicles: with camera-based traffic sign recognition

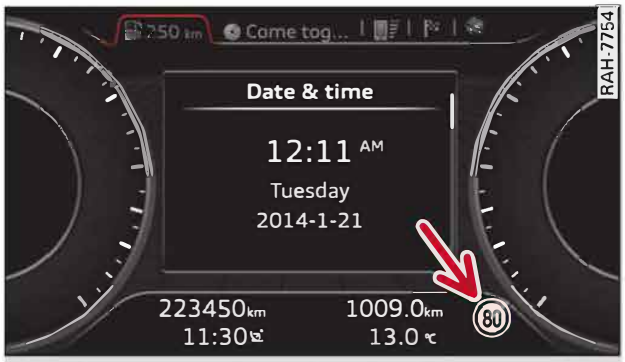


Fig. 16 Instrument cluster: Secondary display

Calling up traffic sign menu

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > **On-board computer**, or
- Use the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel too switch to the tab marked "Car" and scroll the thumbwheel to select the desired menu.

Secondary display

If the infotainment display is currently showing a function other than traffic sign recognition, the currently speed limit will be displayed automatically in the bottom right-hand corner as a secondary display to the selected system ⇨ *Fig. 16*. If the system is able to detect a temporary speed restriction in a given situation, it will update the display accordingly.

Temporary speed restrictions are displayed in the following situations:

– A temporary speed restriction for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
– A speed restriction applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
– A speed restriction for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights (or front fog lights, depending on your vehicle's equipment) are switched on.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with camera-based traffic sign recognition

No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available, and no speed limit has been detected.

Function unavailable in this country

The vehicle is being driven in a country outside the system's operational area. For a current list of supported countries, go to www.audi.com.

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. See owner's manual

This message appears, for instance, in the event of a navigation system fault. The limited functionality may cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is currently unable to function properly and will be deactivated. This can happen, for instance, if the camera is dirty and a navigation system malfunction occurs simultaneously.

Fault. See owner's manual

The function of the system is impaired; the system will be deactivated. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed ⇨ *page 23*.

Please switch on the ignition to display

When the ignition is switched off, this message will appear on the full display to indicate that the system is not available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Doors and windows

Central locking system

Description

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked via the central locking system. You can use any of the following:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 28*
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 28*
– Lock on driver's door ⇨ *page 30*
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 29*

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed or one of the inside door handles is pulled. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 30*.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Unlocking one side of the vehicle only

When you lock the vehicle, the central locking system will lock the doors and the boot lid. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the setting you have selected on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 30*.

Turn signals

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash, one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet is still open or the ignition is still on.

Accidental lock-out

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

– When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors.
– When one of the doors is open, it cannot be locked together with the other doors by pressing the button in the central locking switch and then closing the door ⇨ *page 29*.
– On vehicles with convenience key*, the boot lid will be released again automatically if the key that was last in use is left inside the boot when the boot lid is closed. The hazard warning lights will flash four times.

To prevent yourself from being locked out, do not lock the vehicle with the remote control key/convenience key* until all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

Note

– Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

Set of keys

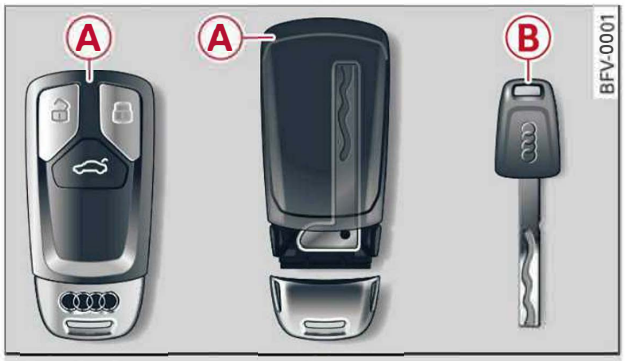


Fig. 17 Keys supplied with the vehicle

Ⓐ Remote control key with integrated emergency key

The remote control key can be used to lock and unlock the car. An emergency key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 27*. You should ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

check regularly that the emergency key is still present in the remote control key casing.

Ⓑ Spare key

This key is intended for temporary use only and should be used only in an emergency. Keep it in a safe place and do not carry it on the keyring.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for *that* key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you. It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Number of keys

You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle using the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Initialised keys**. This feature enables used car buyers to make sure they have received all of the keys.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the engine with the key if there is another ignition key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on remote control key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your remote control key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required. This also applies to vehicles with convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use the same car regularly, it is a good idea for each person to have his or her “own” remote control key. When you switch off the ignition or lock the vehicle, your personal settings for the following convenience features are stored and assigned to the remote control key:

– Air conditioner
– Central locking system
– Windows
– Background lighting*
– Parking aid*
– Active lane assist*
– Side assist*
– Drive select

The stored settings are then recalled automatically the next time the vehicle is unlocked, the doors are opened or the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.

Note

The function of the remote control key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the emergency key

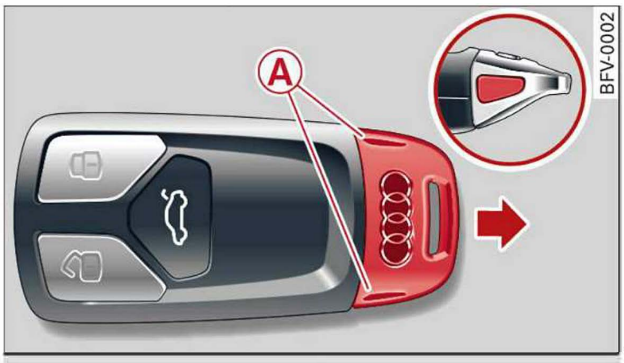


Fig. 18 Remote control key (front): Removing cap

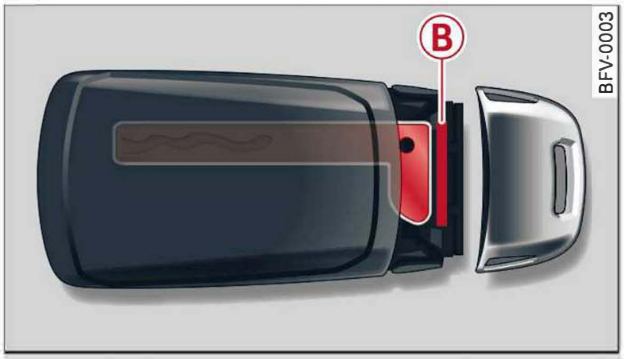


Fig. 19 Remote control key (rear): Removing emergency key

- ▸ Press the release catches Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 18* and take off the cap.
- ▸ Press the plastic strip Ⓑ. A spring will eject the emergency key part of the way. You can now remove the emergency key completely.

You can use the emergency key to ...

– activate/deactivate* the front airbag on the passenger's side ⇨ *page 211*.
– lock/unlock the glove box.
– lock/unlock the vehicle manually ⇨ *page 30*.
– lock the doors manually ⇨ *page 30*.

LED and battery in remote control key

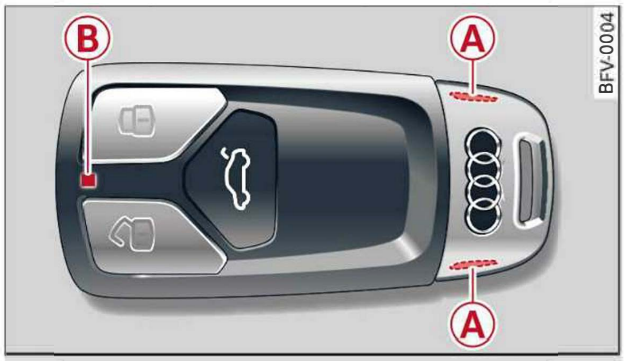


Fig. 20 Remote control key (front): LED

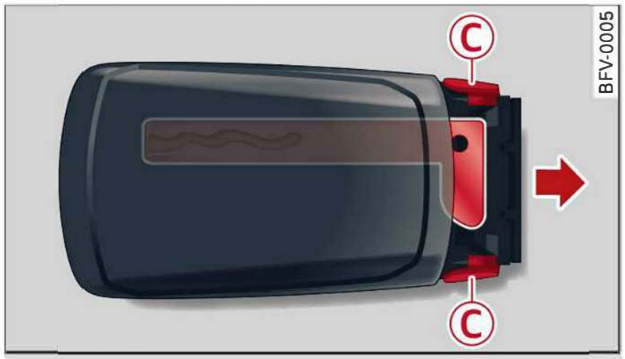


Fig. 21 Remote control key (rear): Removing battery carrier

LED on remote control key

The LED Ⓑ lights up when you press the buttons.

- ▸ The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- ▸ The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- ▸ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the remote control key is flat. In addition, the indicator lamp will light up and the message **Remote control key: please change key battery** will appear. Replace the battery.

Replacing the battery for the remote control key

- ▸ Press the release catches Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 20* and take off the cap.
- ▸ Press the release catches Ⓒ ⇨ *Fig. 21* on the battery carrier and at the same time pull the battery carrier out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing downwards. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Slide the battery carrier carefully into the remote control key.
- Fit the cap.

For the sake of the environment

Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.

Note

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle by remote control

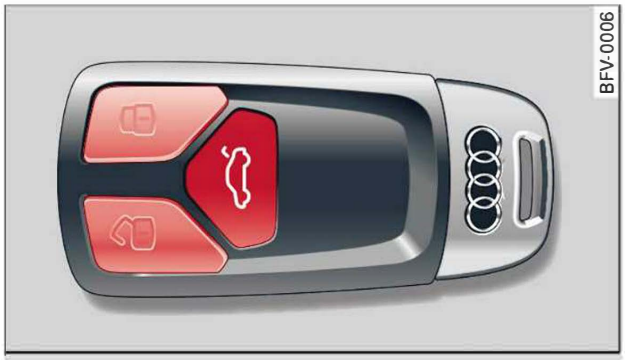


Fig. 22 Remote control key: Buttons

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *Fig. 22*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once** ⇨ ⚠ *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 32*.
- To open the boot lid, press the button.

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within 45 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

The system will unlock either all the doors or only the driver's door, depending on the settings you have chosen on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 30*.

WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 31*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

– Do not use the remote control key when the vehicle is out of sight.
– On vehicles with the convenience key* the selector lever must be in P, otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

The doors and the boot lid can be locked and unlocked without handling the remote control key.

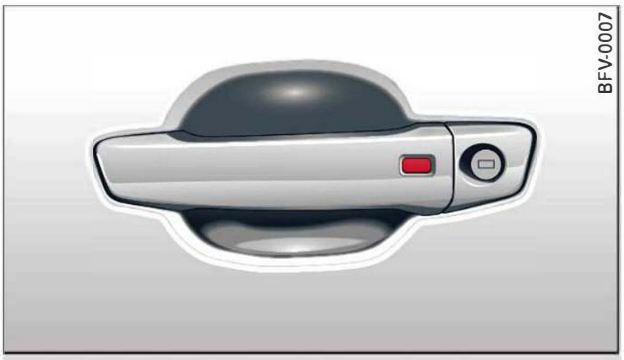


Fig. 23 Door handle: Sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

- Take hold of the door handle. The door will be unlocked automatically.
- To open the door, pull the door handle.

Locking the vehicle

- Move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox); otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *Fig. 23*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not take hold of the door handle while doing so.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from any of the doors. The remote control key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the door handle. It does not matter where you carry the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

key, for instance whether it is in your jacket pocket or in a briefcase.

The locking function may be affected if you grasp the door handle while the vehicle is being locked.

Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

The system will unlock either all the doors or only one of the doors, depending on the settings you have chosen on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 30*.

WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 31*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

Please note the following points if the vehicle is left parked for long periods:

– To save electrical power, the proximity sensors are switched off after a few days. You will then need to pull the door handle once to unlock the vehicle, and a second time to open it.
– To prevent the battery from becoming discharged and thus maintain the vehicle's starting ability for as long as possible, the power management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle with this convenience function.

Central locking switch



Fig. 24 Driver's door: Central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button.

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

– The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the *outside* (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
– The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
– In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

WARNING

– The central locking switch is still operative when the ignition is switched off and will automatically lock the entire vehicle when the button is pressed.
– The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.
– Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle.

Note

The doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 25*. You ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

can unlock the vehicle again via the button in the central locking switch.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

You can use the infotainment system to select which doors are unlocked by the central locking system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

Unlock doors - You can select whether **all** doors or only the **driver**'s door are unlocked by the central locking system. The boot lid will also be unlocked if you select **all**. If you select **driver** on vehicles with convenience key*, only one door will be unlocked (whichever door you grip by the handle).

When the **driver** setting is activated, you can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the button on the remote control key twice.

Fold mirrors* - If you select **on**, the exterior mirrors will be folded in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* on the door handle.

Lock when driving[1)] - Select **on** if you want the vehicle to be locked automatically when you are driving. This will lock all the doors and the boot lid.

Confirmation tone[1)] - If you select **on**, an acoustic signal will be given when you lock the vehicle.

Locking and unlocking the doors manually

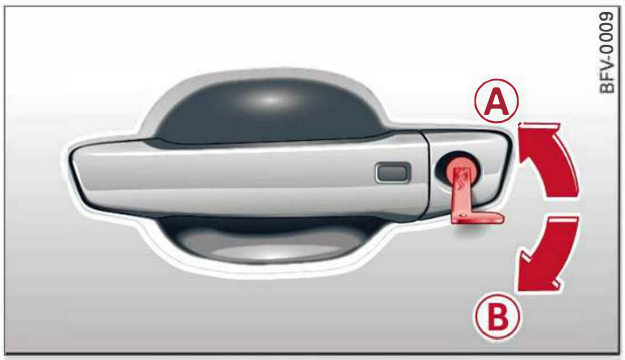


Fig. 25 Driver's door lock

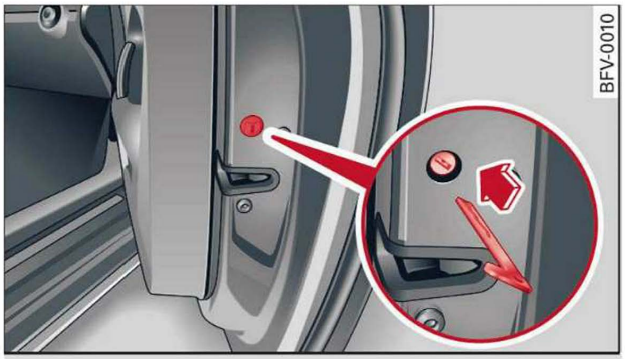


Fig. 26 Passenger's door: Locking manually

If the central locking system should fail to work, the doors have to be locked/unlocked separately using the emergency key or the spare key.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 27*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 25*.
- To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox) and turn the key to the lock position Ⓑ **once** ⇨ ⚠.

Locking the passenger's door with the emergency key

A mechanical locking device (only visible when the door is open) is provided on the passenger's door.

- Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 27*.
- Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *Fig. 26*.
- Insert the key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the ▶

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

right* side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).

Once the passenger's door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

WARNING

On vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system*, do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 31*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to vehicles: with anti-theft alarm system



Fig. 27 End face of (open) driver's door: Button for interior monitor/tow-away protection

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when you lock the vehicle in the usual way and is switched off again when you unlock the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system comprises the following components:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the bonnet, the boot lid or any of the doors are forced open. The alarm system is armed whenever the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle by turning the key in the driver's door lock, you should switch on the ignition within 15 seconds to prevent the alarm from being triggered. On some export versions, the alarm is triggered immediately when you open a door.

To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the button on the remote control key.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered if movements are detected in the interior (e.g. by animals) or if the vehicle's inclination is changed (e.g. during transport). You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by switching off the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection. To do so, proceed as follows:

- Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 27*. The LED in the button will light up.
- If you now lock the vehicle, the interior monitor and tow-away protection will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the infotainment display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated. You can switch off the safelock mechanism* by using one of the following options:

- Press the button on the remote control key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds** (applies to vehicles with convenience key). Or:
- Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**. ▶

1) This function is not available on all export versions/equipment versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The alarm is triggered if you switch off the safelock mechanism* and a door handle is then operated. To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against theft.

Note

The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows are closed.

Boot lid

Opening and closing the boot lid

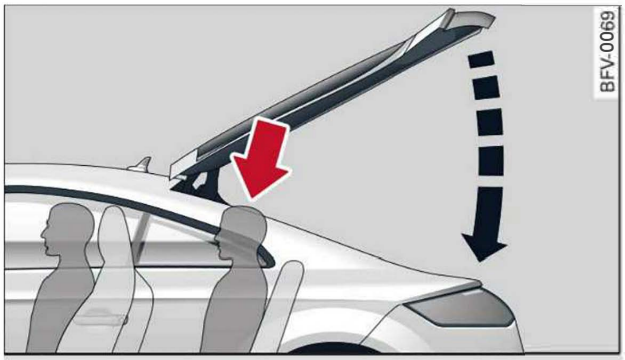


Fig. 28 Boot lid open

Opening boot lid

- To open the boot lid, press the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or:
- Pull the boot lid up.

Closing boot lid

- Pull down the boot lid and let it drop into the latch ⇨ .

WARNING

- Always pay attention to passengers in the rear seat when closing the boot lid - risk of injury!
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving - this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn into the interior.

Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

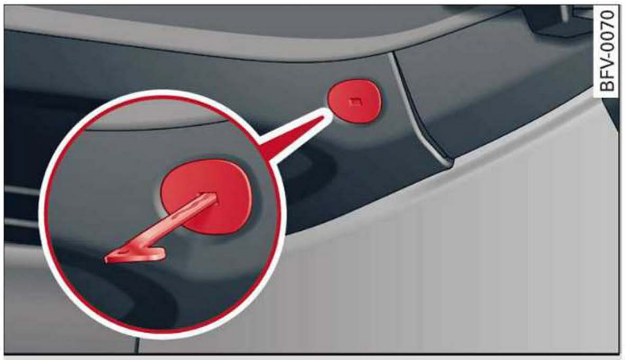


Fig. 29 Accessing manual release lever on left of luggage compartment below rear window



Fig. 30 Manual release lever in luggage compartment (from inside)

- ▸ Fold down the left backrest.
- ▸ Prise off the cover ⇨ *Fig. 29* using the emergency key ⇨ *page 27*.
- ▸ Pull the plastic cord in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 30*.

Electric windows

Controls

The driver can operate all the electric windows.

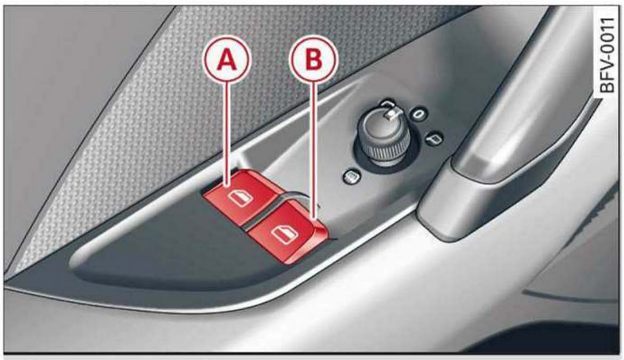


Fig. 31 Detail of the driver's door: Controls

All electric windows have **two-stage switches**:

Opening a window

- ▸ Press the switch as far as the **first stop** and hold it until the window has moved to the desired position.
- ▸ Press the switch briefly **to the second stop**: the window will automatically open all the way.

Closing a window

- ▸ Pull the switch as far as the **first stop** and hold it until the window has moved to the desired position.
- ▸ Pull the switch briefly **to the second stop**: the window will automatically close all the way.

Switches for electric windows

Ⓐ Driver's window

Ⓑ Front passenger's window

WARNING

– Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.

– Always be careful when closing the windows. Careless use of the electric windows can cause severe injuries.

– When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.

Note

– The windows can be operated for about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.

– When the doors are opened the windows will automatically come down approximately 10 mm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Convenience open/close function

The windows can be opened or closed simultaneously when the vehicle is unlocked or locked.

Convenience open function

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all the windows have reached the desired position, or
- First unlock the vehicle using the button on the remote control key, then insert the key in the driver's door lock, turn it to the "unlock" position and hold it there until all the windows have reached the desired position.

Convenience close function

- Press and hold the locking button on the remote control key until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠, or
- Lock the driver's door with the key and hold the key in the “lock” position until all the windows are closed

Convenience close function with convenience key*

- Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle until all the windows are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

Adjusting settings for convenience open function via infotainment system

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

If you wish to use the convenience open function for the windows, select **on** for **Front windows**.

⚠ WARNING

– Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should only use the remote control open and close functions within about 2 metres of the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows when pressing the button to close them. The windows and soft top stop moving as soon as the button is released.

What to do after a malfunction

The one-touch open and close function must be reactivated if the battery has been disconnected.

- Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
- Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 32 Garage door opener: Examples of various devices which can be activated

The garage door opener (HomeLink) allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electric devices by means of control buttons inside your car. It comprises three buttons integrated in the headliner which perform the functions of up to three handheld transmitters.

To operate the desired systems with the garage door opener, you first need to program the buttons in the headliner.

⚠ WARNING

When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– For security reasons we recommend that you delete the programming of the buttons prior to selling your vehicle.
– For more information about HomeLink, please see www.homelink.com.

Controls

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (HomeLink)

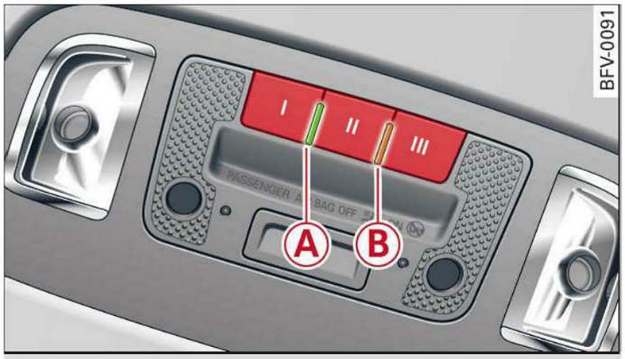


Fig. 33 Headliner: Operating unit

Important: The button in the headliner must be programmed ⇨*page 35* and the vehicle must be within range of the garage door or other system you wish to operate.

- To open the garage door, press the button. The LED Ⓐ will light up or flash.
- To close the garage door, press the button again.

Note

When opening/closing the garage door, do not keep the button pressed for more than 20 seconds; otherwise the garage door opener will switch to the programming mode.

Programming the transmitter

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (HomeLink)

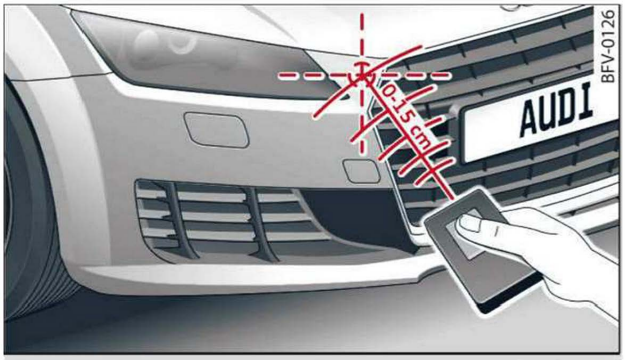


Fig. 34 Distance between radiator grille and hand-held transmitter

Programming a button: Stage 1 (at the operating unit)

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold down the two outer buttons in the headliner ⇨*page 35, Fig. 33* until the yellow LED Ⓑ goes out and the green LED Ⓐ lights up. This procedure will delete the standard factory settings and does **not** need to be repeated when programming the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the particular button in the headliner that you would like to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED Ⓑ flashes. The programming mode is then activated for 5 minutes.
5. Step in front of your vehicle with the original hand-held transmitter for the system you wish to assign to the button in the headliner.

Programming a button: Stage 2 (at the radiator grille)

6. Hold the hand-held transmitter in front of your car's radiator grille ⇨*Fig. 34*.
7. Now press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle start to flash. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the hazard lights flash three times, the button has been programmed successfully. If the hazard lights flash once only, the programming operation has failed or the five minute programming period has expired. Repeat the programming procedure starting ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with the 3rd step, or try holding the transmitter nearer or further away from the radiator grille.

9. If the garage door or other system still fails to be activated using the buttons in the headliner after programming is completed, it is possible that the system might be working with a rolling code instead of the normal fixed security code. If this is the case, a **rolling code programming** is required in addition to the steps described above ⇨ *page 36*.

Follow the instructions above to program the other two buttons in the headliner. Start with the 3rd step.

Erasing the button programming

Programmed buttons can only be erased all at once; it is not possible to erase them individually. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Press and hold down the two outer buttons in the headliner until the yellow LED Ⓑ goes out and the green LED Ⓐ lights up.

Reprogramming the buttons

- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ To reprogram an individual button, press and hold the desired button until the LED Ⓐ begins to flash rapidly (after about 20 seconds). Then release the button immediately. The programming mode is then activated for 5 minutes.
- ▸ Continue with the 5th step.

Note

– The required distance between the handheld transmitter and the HomeLink module inside the radiator grille ⇨ *Fig. 34* depends on the system you are programming.

– With some types of systems, you may need to briefly release the button during programming and then press it again. When programming a new device, keep the button pressed for at least 15 seconds before trying again with the transmitter in a different position. Watch out for your vehicles's hazard light signals during that time.

Rolling code programming

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Some devices require rolling code programming.

Identifying a rolling code

- ▸ Press a programmed button in the headliner again and hold it down.
- ▸ Watch the LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 35, Fig. 33*. If the LED starts flashing rapidly, this indicates that the system you wish to operate, such as a garage door, is equipped with a rolling code.
- ▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating a system's drive unit

- ▸ Locate the programming button on the system's drive unit. The exact location and colour of the button may vary depending on the type of system.
- ▸ Press the programming button on the system's drive unit (this will normally cause an indicator lamp on the unit to light up). You now have about **30 seconds** to start and complete the programming process for the button in the headliner.

Programming the button in the headliner

- ▸ Press the previously programmed button in the headliner for 2 seconds.
- ▸ Press the button for 2 seconds again to complete rolling code programming.
- ▸ For some systems, the button may have to be pressed a third time to complete the programming sequence.

After programming, the system should recognise the signal and respond when the button in the headliner is pressed. Now the other control buttons can be programmed as required.

Note

– Having a second person assist you makes programming of the rolling code easier and faster.

– If you encounter problems programming the rolling code you may find helpful information in the operating instructions of the system you wish to operate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 35 Dashboard: Light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the appropriate position. The symbol lights up when the lights are on.

O - Lights off (on vehicles for some markets the daytime running lights* are switched on when the ignition is switched on).

AUTO* - The automatic headlights switch on (and off again) automatically according to the ambient light conditions (for instance at dusk, in the rain or in a tunnel).

- Side lights

- Dipped headlights

- All-weather lights*

- Rear fog light(s)

All-weather lights*

On vehicles with all-weather lights, the front lights are adjusted automatically so that the headlights on your own vehicle do not blind you, for instance when driving on a wet road.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control*

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled when the vehicle is heavily laden. The headlight beam settings are adjusted automatically (even during braking and acceleration).

Light functions

The following light functions depend on which equipment is fitted in your vehicle and work only when the light switch is set to AUTO. You can deactivate them in the **Audi adaptive light** menu in the infotainment system ⇨ *page 39*.

Static cornering light (turning light)* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - the turning light is automatically activated when the steering wheel angle exceeds a specified value (up to about 70 km/h) or when the turn signals are switched on (up to about 40 km/h). This feature provides better illumination at the side of the vehicle when you turn off at a junction.

Motorway light* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adjusts the vehicle lighting on motorways, according to your speed.

Speed-dependent light distribution* (on vehicles with LED headlights) - this function adjusts the light distribution as required in towns, on motorways and on other main roads. Intersections can also be illuminated if your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system*.

WARNING

- The automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on manually when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.
- Observe all relevant statutory requirements when using the lighting systems described here.

CAUTION

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with statutory regulations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is located in the mounting for the interior mirror. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.
– Some of the settings for the exterior lighting can be adjusted in the driver information system.
– A buzzer will sound if you remove the ignition key and open the door when the exterior lighting is on.
– On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights switch on together with the daytime running lights.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This phenomenon has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.

Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal lever also operates the main beam headlights, parking lights and headlight flasher.

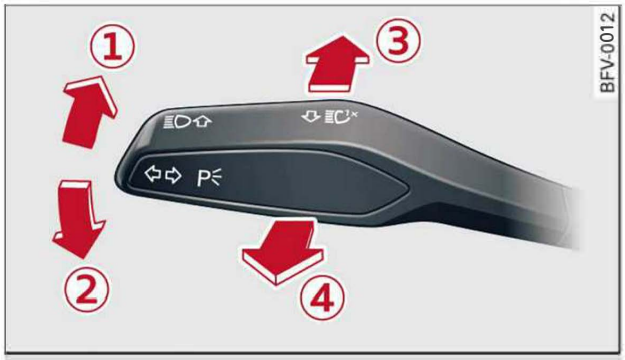


Fig. 36 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights P≤

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The parking lights will be switched on if you do this with the ignition switched off.

① - Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② - Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

Main beam and headlight flasher ≡D

Move the lever to the appropriate position:

③ - Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* ⇨ *page 38*)

④ - Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp ≡D will light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

A buzzer will sound if you open the door when the parking light is on.

Main beam assist

Applies to vehicles: with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

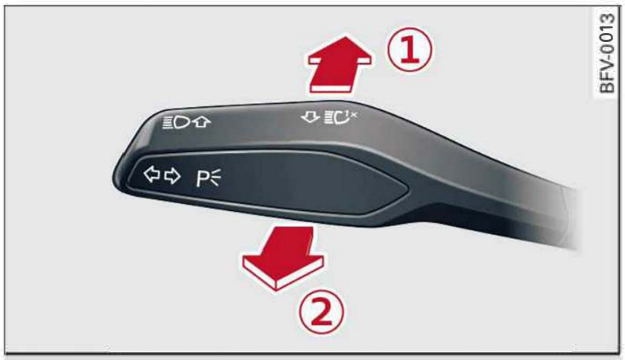


Fig. 37 Turn signal and main beam lever: Switching main beam assist on/off

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated or deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights, individual segments of the main beam are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The light switch must be set to AUTO, the dipped beam headlights must be on and the main beam assist must be activated on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 39*.

- Press the lever forwards (1) to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp will light up in the infotainment display and the main beams will be switched on/off automatically. An indicator lamp lights up when the main beams are switched on.

Switching the main beams on/off manually

If the main beams are not switched on or if the headlights are not dipped as expected, you can control the dip function manually:

- To switch on the main beams manually, push the lever to position (1). The indicator lamp will light up.
- To dip the headlights manually, pull the lever towards you (2). The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the lever towards you (2) to flash the headlights when the main beam assist is activated and the main beams are dipped. The main beam assist will remain activated.

Driver messages on the infotainment display

Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The camera vision is impaired, e.g. by stickers or dirt.

The sensor is located between the interior mirror and the windscreen. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.

WARNING

The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. In the following situations manual intervention may be necessary:

- Hazardous weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain and snow or water splashes
- Roads on which oncoming traffic is partially concealed (e.g. on motorways)
- Indiscernible road users (e.g. cyclists with insufficient lighting or vehicles with dirty rear lights)
- Tight corners, steep hill crests or valleys
- Poorly lit towns
- Highly reflective objects, such as road signs
- Windscreen misted up, dirty, frosted or covered by stickers in front of the sensor

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

You can change the settings for these functions on the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **early**, **medium** or **late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main beam assist* - You can switch the main beam assist* **on** and **off**.

Audi adaptive light* - You can switch the adaptive light **on** and **off**.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

Coming home / leaving home

The coming home function lights up the area round the vehicle after dark when the ignition has been switched off and the driver's door opened. To activate this function, select **Entry/ exit lights**.

The leaving home function lights up the area round the vehicle after dark when the vehicle is unlocked. To activate this function, select **Entry/ exit lights**.

The coming home and leaving home functions are operational after dark when the light switch is set to **AUTO**.

Hazard warning lights



Fig. 38 Centre console: Switch for hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights are used to make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the switch ⚠ to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

The hazard warning lights are automatically switched on[1)] if you brake hard (and automatically switched off again afterwards).

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard lights are on. The hazard lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Interior lights

Interior lights

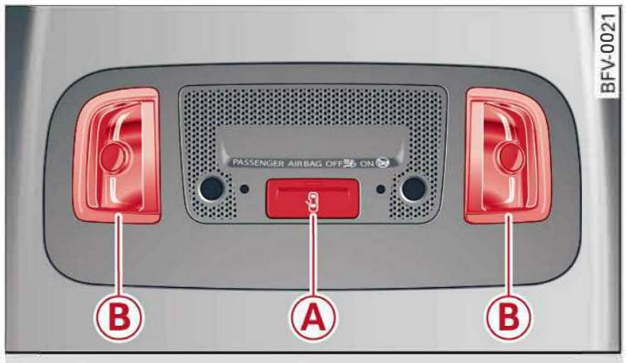


Fig. 39 Headliner: Interior lights

Ⓐ Interior lights (automatic)

Press button Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 39* to control the interior lights automatically.

If the LED in the button is lit, the interior lighting will automatically come on when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the ignition is switched off. The interior lighting goes out a few seconds after the doors are closed, or when the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on. The lighting goes out automatically after a few minutes if a door is left open.

Ⓑ Interior lights (manual)

Press the button to switch the interior lights on/off.

Interior lights

Various optional lighting functions are available for the vehicle interior. The settings for certain ▶

[1)] This function is not available on all models or export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

functions can be adjusted on the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Background lighting**.

Instrument lighting



Fig. 40 Instrument lighting

The brightness of the lighting in the instrument cluster and the centre console can be adjusted as required.

- Briefly press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob towards "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness of the lighting.
- Briefly press the knob again to engage it.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 41 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the appropriate position:

/ - In these positions you can adjust the exterior mirrors (left or right) by moving the knob in the desired direction.

- The mirrors are heated* (depending on the outside temperature and road speed).

- The exterior mirrors are retracted*. One of the infotainment settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 30*.

Tilt function for front passenger's exterior mirror*

The mirror is tilted slightly to provide a better view of the kerb when parking backwards. This feature is operational when the knob is in position .

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by moving the knob in the desired direction. This new position is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key when you take the car out of reverse.

The mirror returns to its original position as soon as you drive forwards at over 15 km/h or switch off the ignition.

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must first be fully retracted with the electric control. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-dazzle setting

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.*

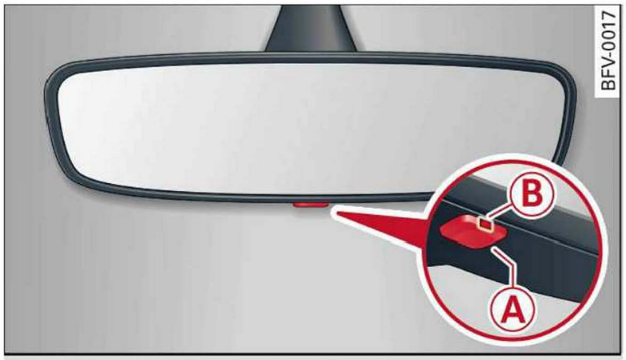


Fig. 42 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▸ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors*

▸ Press button Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 42*. The indicator lamp Ⓑ will light up. The interior and exterior mirrors* will darken automatically when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.

CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors



Fig. 43 Sun visor

The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door ⇨ *Fig. 43* ①. The light for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers



Fig. 44 Windscreen wiper lever

Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

Ⓞ - Wipers off

① - Intermittent wipe. Move switch Ⓐ to the left or to the right to increase or reduce the wiper delay interval. If your vehicle is equipped with the rain sensor*, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain as long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor* is (i.e. the further to the right ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the position of switch Ⓐ is), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* on the infotainment system (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Rain sensor** > **off**.

Ⓑ - Slow wipe

Ⓒ - Fast wipe

Ⓓ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.

Ⓔ - Wash/wipe. The screen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving and the temperature is above approx. 4 °C). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position Ⓔ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Headlight washers*. The headlight washer system* only operates when the lights are switched on. The headlights are automatically washed the first time and every fifth time you move the lever to position Ⓔ.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇨ *page 44, Changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position 0) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the windscreen wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor*. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- The windscreen washer jets are heated* when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades if the wipers leave smearing on the glass. Clean the wiper blades using a soft cloth and a glass cleaning solution.

▸ Set the wiper arms to the service position ⇨ *page 44*.

▸ Lift the wiper arms away from the glass.

WARNING

Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view - risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

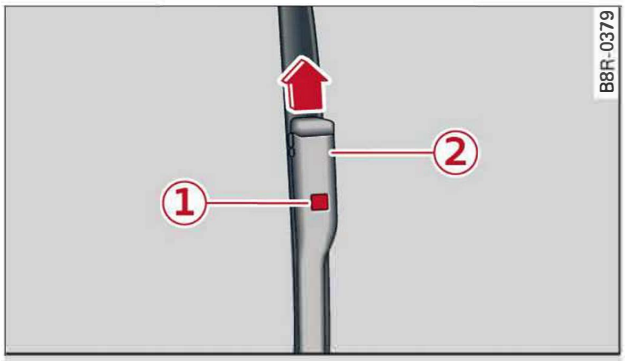


Fig. 45 Removing the wiper blades

Service position / wiper change position

- To move the windscreen wipers to the service position, switch off the ignition and move the windscreen wiper lever briefly to position (4) ⇨ *page 42, Fig. 44*.
- To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and move the windscreen wiper lever to position (4) ⇨ *page 42, Fig. 44*.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Press the release button (1) on the wiper blade ⇨ *Fig. 45*. Keep hold of the wiper blade while doing so.
- Take off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm (2). You should hear it engage in the wiper arm.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- Switch off the service position again.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

CAUTION

– The wipers must be in the service position before lifting them off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
– Never drive your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Note

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
– You cannot activate the service position when the bonnet is open.

Digital compass

Activating and deactivating the compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

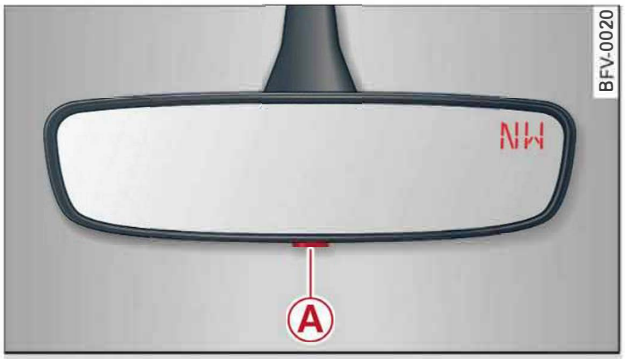


Fig. 46 Interior mirror: Activated digital compass

- To switch the compass on and off, press and hold button (A) until the compass display in the mirror appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is on. The points of the compass are displayed as follows: **N** (North), **NE** (North East), **E** (East), **SE** (South East), **S** (South), **SW** (South West), **W** (West), **NW** (North West).

Note

To avoid inaccurate compass readings, do not hold any remote controls or other electrical devices or metal objects near the interior mirror.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the correct compass calibration zone

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The correct compass calibration zone must first be set before the compass can give an accurate reading.

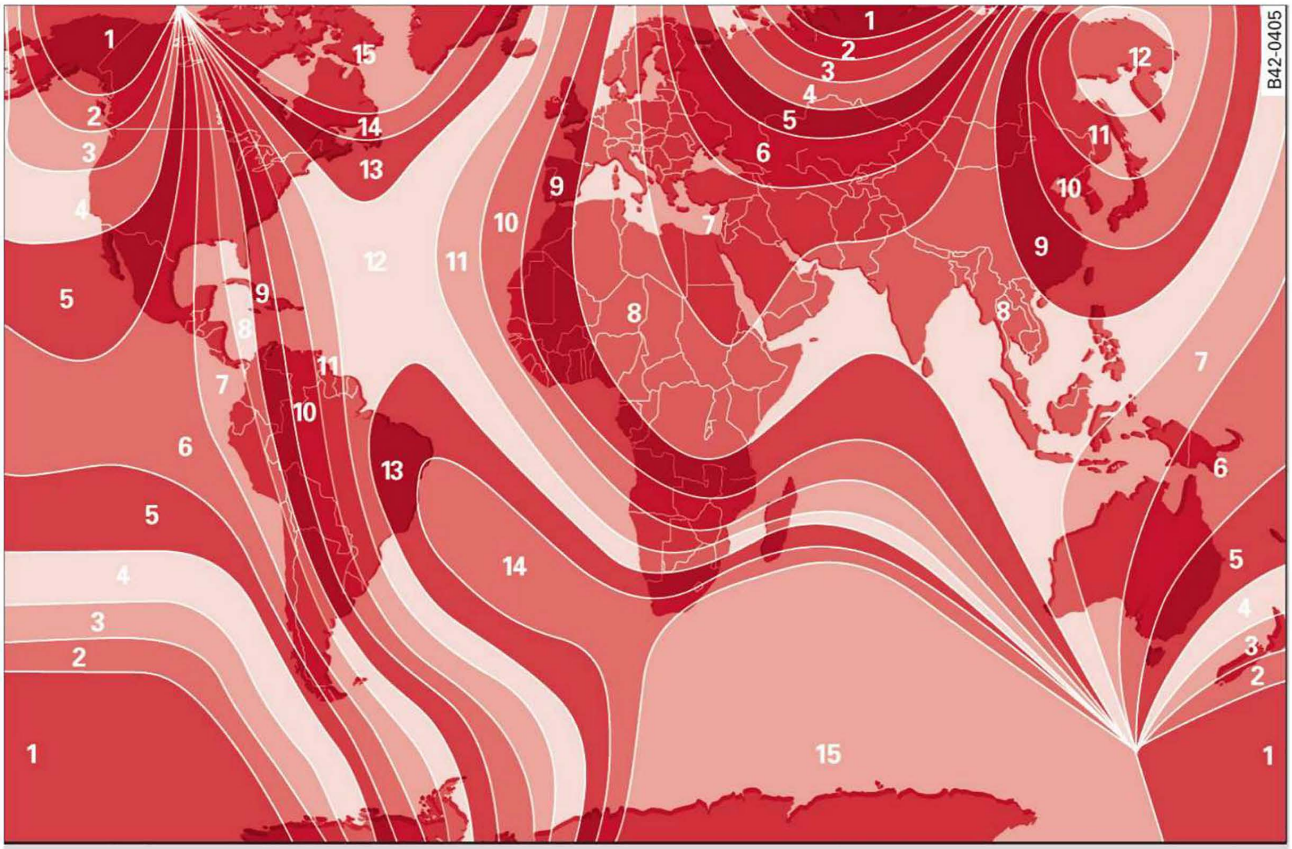


Fig. 47 Map of compass calibration zones

- ▸ Press and hold button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 44, Fig. 46* until the currently set zone number is displayed on the interior mirror.
- ▸ Press button Ⓐ repeatedly until the correct zone number appears. The adjustment mode will be ended automatically after a few seconds.

WARNING

Calibrate your compass at a location where there is no traffic so that you do not endanger yourself or other road users (accident risk).

Calibrating compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The compass must be re-calibrated if the display is incorrect or inaccurate.

- ▸ Press and hold button Ⓐ until the letter **C** appears in the interior mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at a speed of about 10 km/h until a point of the compass is displayed in the interior mirror.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats and storage

General notes

WARNING

You will find important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers on ⇨ *page 192, Safe driving*.

Front seats

Manual adjustment of seats

Applies to vehicles: with manual seat adjustment



Fig. 48 Front seat: Manual adjustment

① - Seat forwards/backwards: Lift the lever and move the seat.

② - Thigh support*: Lift the handle and move the thigh support in or out.

③ - Angle* of seat cushion: Pull/press the lever.

④ - Lumbar support*: Press the appropriate side of the button.

⑤ - Seat height: Pull/press the lever.

⑥ - Backrest angle: Turn the knob.

WARNING

– Never adjust the front seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belt and airbag could fail to restrain the wearer properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Electric adjustment of seats

Applies to vehicles: with electric seat adjustment

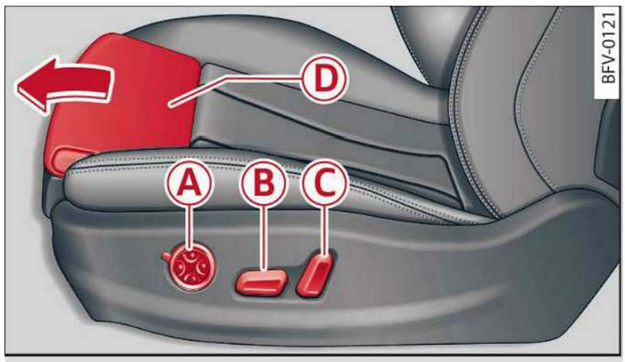


Fig. 49 Front seat: Electric adjustment

Ⓐ - Lumbar support or multi-function button* ⇨ *page 47*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button.

Ⓑ - Seat height: Press the button up/down. To adjust the front of the seat cushion, press the front of the button up/down. To adjust the rear of the seat cushion, press the rear of the button up/down.

Ⓑ - Seat forwards/backwards: Press the button forwards/backwards.

Ⓒ - Backrest angle: Press the button forwards/backwards.

Ⓓ - Thigh support*: Lift the handle and move the thigh support in or out.

WARNING

– Never adjust the front seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
– The electric seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off and when the key is not in the ignition. To avoid accidental injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belt and airbag could fail to restrain the wearer properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Multi-function button

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function button

The multi-function button can be used to adjust the side cushions.

▸ If you turn the multi-function button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 46, Fig. 49* to the left or right, the lateral support on the seat will be increased/reduced by adjusting the side cushions on the backrest.

Note

The air in the side cushions* is released when you open the driver's door. This makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle. The side cushions are re-inflated as soon as you drive the vehicle.

Easy entry function

The easy entry function facilitates access to the rear seats.

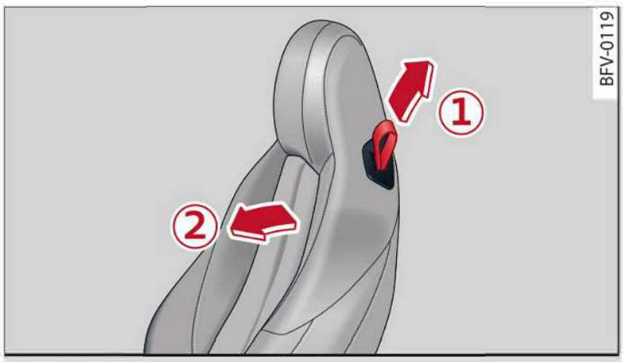


Fig. 50 Driver's seat: Lever on backrest

▸ To fold down the front seat backrest, pull the ring and tip the backrest forwards.

WARNING

Before you drive off, always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in position.

Front centre armrest

Applies to vehicles: with centre armrest

The centre armrest can be adjusted to several positions.

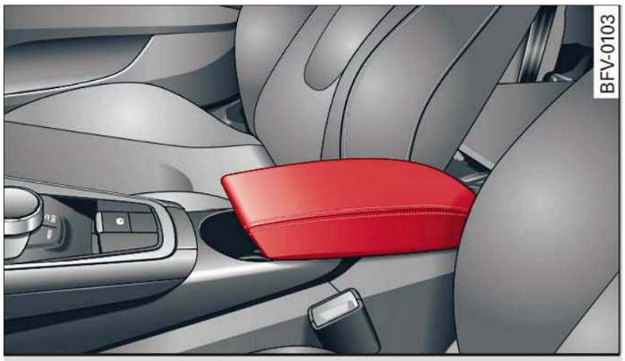


Fig. 51 Armrest between driver's seat and front passenger's seat

▸ To adjust the angle, lift the armrest ⇨ *Fig. 51* until it engages in the desired position.
▸ To lower the armrest again, lift the armrest slightly from the top click stop and then fold it back down. Then raise the armrest to the desired position if necessary.

You can move the armrest backwards or forwards.

There is a storage compartment underneath the armrest.

Rear seat bench

Due to limited headroom, certain precautions should be observed when the rear seats are in use.

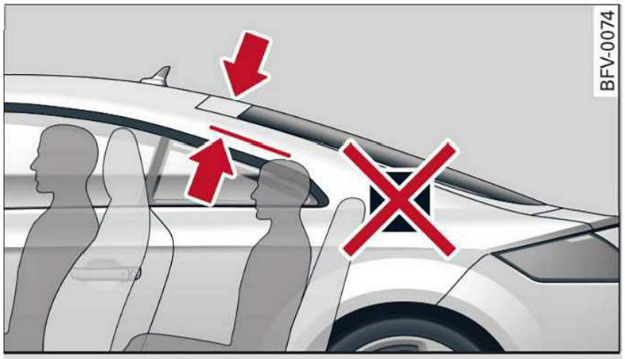


Fig. 52 Correct seating position in the rear seat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– The rear seat is only suitable for persons up to 1.45 m.
– The distance between the occupant's head and the rear window must be at least 2.5 cm when sitting upright in the rear seat - otherwise serious head injuries could be caused when closing the boot lid or in the event of an accident. Always pay close attention to passengers in the rear seat when closing the boot lid.
– Heavy or hard objects must not be stored on the luggage compartment cover - this puts all passengers at risk of injury when opening the boot lid or when severe braking occurs.

Ashtray



Fig. 53 Centre armrest raised: Ashtray

The ashtray is located in the centre console below the centre armrest. Lift the lid to open the ashtray. Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it (e.g. after emptying it).

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Cigarette lighter and electrical socket

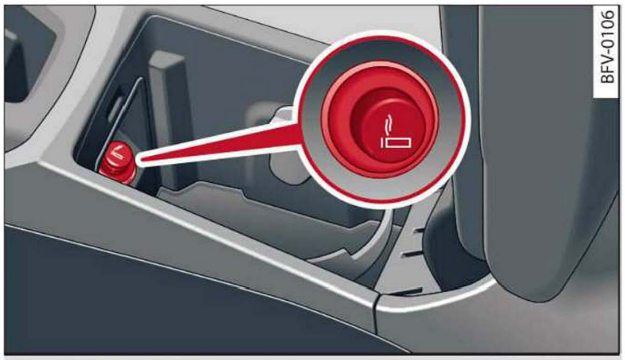


Fig. 54 Centre armrest raised: Cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter and electrical socket only work when the ignition is on.

Using the cigarette lighter

▸ Fold up the centre armrest (if necessary) to access the cigarette lighter.
▸ Press in the cigarette lighter.
▸ When the cigarette lighter springs out, pull it out completely.

Using the electrical socket

▸ Fold up the centre armrest (if necessary) to access the electrical socket.
▸ Take out the cigarette lighter (if necessary).
▸ Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

The cigarette lighter employs a standard 12 Volt socket which can be used as a power source for electrical appliances. The appliances connected to the socket must not exceed a power rating of 100 W.

WARNING

Take care when using the cigarette lighter. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns.

CAUTION

– Always use the correct type of plugs to avoid damaging the sockets.
– The cigarette lighter socket should only be used for a short period of time as a power source for electrical equipment. Please use ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the electrical sockets* in the vehicle when connecting equipment for longer periods.

Note

– Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off will drain the battery.
– Do not attempt to charge the battery of your vehicle using a small battery charger of the type that is connected to the cigarette lighter or the electrical socket inside the vehicle.

Storage

Cup holder

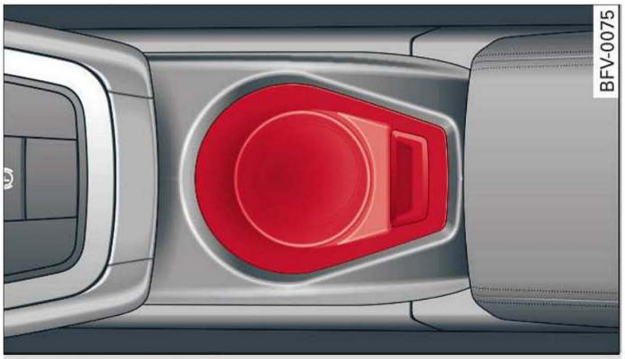


Fig. 55 Cup holder

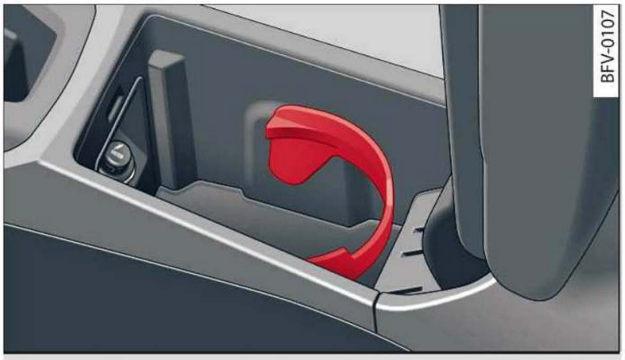


Fig. 56 Centre armrest raised: Cup holder*

Cup holder* underneath the centre armrest

▸ Fold up the centre armrest ⇨ *page 47*.
▸ If necessary, fold back the plastic retainer ⇨ *Fig. 56*.

WARNING

– Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.

– Do not use hard china cups or glasses. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to e.g. the electrical equipment or the seat covers.

Glove box

The lockable glove box is equipped with a light.



Fig. 57 Glove box

▸ To open the glove box, pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 57* and open the lid.
▸ To close the glove box, push the lid upwards until it engages.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep the glove box lid closed when driving.

Storage compartments in the front seats

Applies to vehicles: with storage compartments in the front seats

There is a fold-out drawer in the front part of each front seat.

▸ To open the storage compartment, pull the handle.
▸ To close the storage compartment, close the lid and push it in until it engages. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

The storage compartment will hold a maximum weight of 1 kg.

Coat hooks

Applies to vehicles: with coat hooks

WARNING

– Make sure that any items of clothing hanging from the coat hooks do not obstruct your view to the rear.
– Only use the coat hooks for light items of clothing and make sure that there are no heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.

Luggage compartment

General notes

WARNING

Please refer to the important safety notes on ⇨ *page 201, Stowing luggage safely*.

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover blocks the view into the luggage compartment.

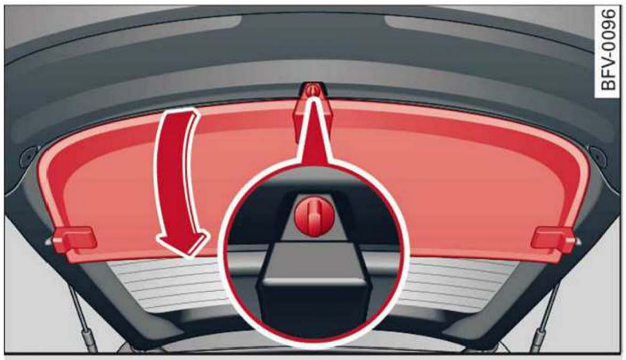


Fig. 58 Open boot lid with closed luggage compartment cover

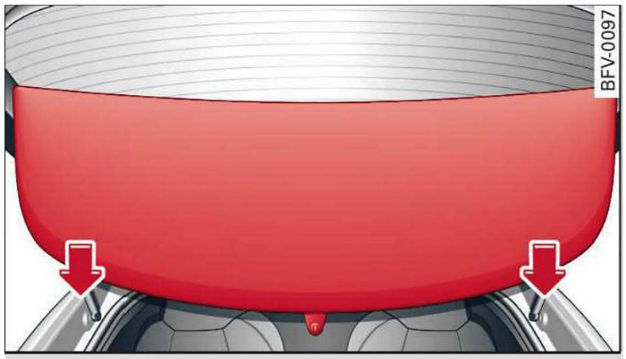


Fig. 59 Luggage compartment cover released

Removing the luggage compartment cover

▸ To release the luggage compartment cover, turn the catch to the horizontal position ⇨ *Fig. 58*.
▸ Take hold of the luggage compartment cover by the sides and pull it in the direction of the arrows ⇨ *Fig. 59*.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

▸ Fit the retainers onto the pins and slide the luggage compartment cover upwards.
▸ Turn the catch to the vertical position (apply light pressure only).

WARNING

– The luggage compartment cover must always be fixed properly – risk of accident!
– The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could cause injury in an accident or if the brakes are applied suddenly.

CAUTION

Hard objects placed on the luggage compartment cover could chafe against the wires of the heating element or aerial in the rear window and cause damage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Extending the luggage compartment

The two sections of the backrest can be folded forwards either together or separately to increase the capacity of the luggage compartment.



Fig. 60 Backrest release lever (left-hand side)

Folding down backrest

- ▸ Press the release lever ⇨ *Fig. 60* in the direction indicated (arrow).
- ▸ Fold down the backrest.

Returning backrest to an upright position

- ▸ Push the backrest up until it engages securely ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belts can provide proper protection in the rear seats.
– The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.

CAUTION

When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are not caught up and damaged in the catches for the backrest.

Lowering the luggage compartment floor panel

The luggage compartment floor panel can be lowered in certain special cases.



Fig. 61 Luggage compartment: Floor panel removed

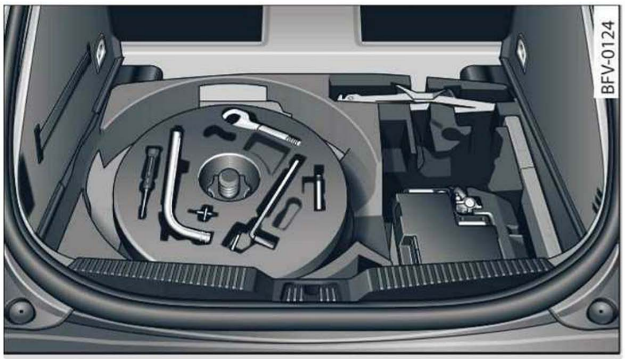


Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel removed

- ▸ Take out the floor panel ⇨ *page 242*.
- ▸ Remove the two plastic base panels.
- ▸ Turn the knob anti-clockwise and take out the foam insert.
- ▸ Take out the spare wheel.
- ▸ Put the foam insert back in and tighten the knob by turning it clockwise.
- ▸ Put the floor panel back in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Please be aware that you will be unable to drive the vehicle in the event of a flat tyre. Note the relevant statutory regulations before removing the spare wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roof carrier

The roof carrier must be attached only in the area of the locating pins.

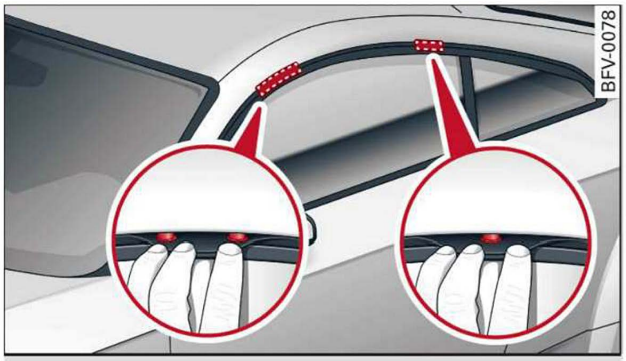


Fig. 63 Attachment points for carrier units

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

– The rain channels are moulded into the roof as part of the aerodynamic roof design. It is therefore not possible to mount conventional roof luggage racks. We recommend using the carrier units from the range of Audi Genuine accessories.
– These carrier units form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Special fixtures must then be added in order to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or boats on the roof. All the elements of this system are available from Audi dealers.
– The maximum permissible roof load for your vehicle is **75 kg**. The load limit applies to the combined weight of the carrier system and the load itself.
– It will not be possible to carry the full maximum load if the roof carrier you are using is rated for a load which is less than this figure. Do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier, which is listed in the fitting instructions.

Mounting

The feet of the carrier units must be fitted exactly in the area of the locating pins between the side frame and the roof frame trim ⇨ *Fig. 63*. The locating pins come into view when you push the sealing lip back off the roof frame trim using the tool provided for this purpose.

WARNING

– To prevent accidents, loads carried on the roof must be securely attached.
– Do not exceed the maximum roof load for the vehicle, the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight, as this could cause an accident.
– When transporting heavy or bulky loads on the roof, bear in mind that the car's handling is affected by the extra weight on the roof and a possible susceptibility to cross winds. Adjust your speed and driving style accordingly to avoid accidents.

CAUTION

Any damage to the vehicle caused by the use of other types of roof rack or incorrect installation will not be covered by the factory warranty. The roof carrier system must therefore be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.

For the sake of the environment

Roof carriers are often left attached for convenience, even when they are not being used. However, the increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more fuel. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

The air conditioner heats, cools and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The pollution filter removes impurities, such as dust and pollen, from the air.

For the sake of the environment

If you wish to save fuel, switch off the cooling mode on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C button in the rotary control ②. This will also reduce emissions.

Note

– Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
– Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
– If you notice, for instance, that the seat* or rear window heating is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the power management function. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

Controls for manual air conditioner

Applies to vehicles: with manual air conditioner

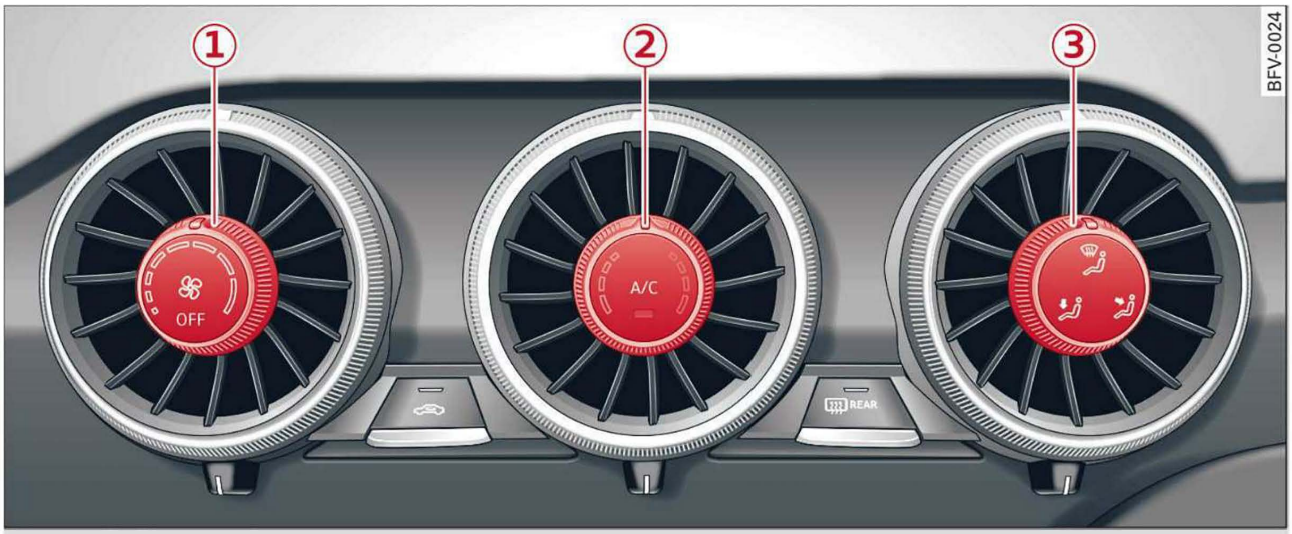


Fig. 64 Manual air conditioner: Controls

The rotary controls and switches are used to control the functions. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

For a comfortable climate inside the vehicle:

– In the summer, adjust the temperature to just a few degrees below the outside temperature
– Do not turn the blower up too high
– Do not point the air outlets directly at the occupants

Key-coded settings

Certain settings will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use.

– Manual air conditioner: Seat heating (driver's side), A/C button.

Adjusting the blower speed

The rotary control ① can be used to adjust the blower speed in small steps. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

windows from misting up. To demist the windows, we recommend that you increase the blower speed and set control (3) to .

A/C Switching air cooling on/off

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures (below zero).

Adjusting the temperature

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature in small steps.

Adjusting the air distribution

The rotary control (3) can be used to adjust the **air distribution**.

At the setting, the windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted. The air recirculation is switched off, but can be switched on again manually by pressing the button.

The round air outlets in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 56*.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Switching air recirculation on/off

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues ⇨ .

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the control is in the defrost position .

REAR Switching rear window heating on/off

If rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least two seconds. This setting will be stored for approximately 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls for automatic air conditioner

Applies to vehicles: with automatic air conditioner



Fig. 65 Automatic air conditioner: Controls

The rotary controls, the buttons in the rotary controls and the switches are used to control the functions. The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F). The air conditioner is fully automatic, and will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the blower speed and the air distribution are regulated automatically. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the *defrost* setting).
Key-coded settings: The automatic air conditioner settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key which is being used.

Adjusting the blower speed

The rotary control (1) can be used to adjust the blower speed in small steps. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up. You can adjust the blower speed manually. Press the AUTO button for automatic control of the blower speed.

A/C Switching air cooling on/off

The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures (below zero).

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature.

Selecting the temperature

The rotary control (2) can be used to adjust the temperature in small steps.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on/off

The automatic mode is switched on when the AUTO button is pressed. The AUTO mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls. The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically.

Adjusting the air distribution

The rotary control (3) can be used to adjust the **air distribution**. Press the AUTO button for automatic air distribution.

The round air outlets in the dashboard can be adjusted ⇨ *page 56*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Switching air recirculation on/off

The air recirculation mode can be switched on manually or automatically*.

– To switch the manual air recirculation mode on/off, press the button.
– The automatic* air recirculation function must be activated on the infotainment system. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **A/C** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor, which is designed for the detection of diesel and petrol exhaust fumes, automatically switches the air recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollution in the outside air.

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues ⇨ ⚠.

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the or AUTO or MAX button is pressed.

MAX Switching the defroster on/off

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature is regulated automatically.

The defroster is switched off when the AUTO button is pressed.

REAR Switching the rear window heating on/off

If rear window heating is activated with the ignition switched on, the battery management determines whether or not the battery charge level is sufficient for the rear window heating to be switched on. Otherwise the rear window heating operates when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least two seconds. This setting will be stored for approximately 15 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.

Adjusting air outlets



Fig. 66 Dashboard: Adjusting air outlet

To adjust the **air flow direction**, turn the ribbed outer adjustment ring ① ⇨ *Fig. 66*.

To adjust the **air flow intensity**, move the lever ② on the air outlet. To shut off the air flow, move the lever all the way to the left.

Seat heating

Applies to vehicles: with seat heating



Fig. 67 Air outlet: Seat heating

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The seat heating has three levels. The heat level is indicated by an LED.

- ▸ To switch on the seat heating, press the button once.
- ▸ To reduce the level, press the button again.
- ▸ To switch off the seat heating, press the button repeatedly until all the LEDs have gone out.

The seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2 after about 10 minutes.

When not to switch on the seat heating

Do **not** switch on the seat heating in the following situations:

– Seat is unused
– A protective cover is fitted on the seat
– A child seat is fitted on the seat
– The seat is damp or wet

WARNING

People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating. These people must not use the seat heating - risk of injury!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.

Note

– The setting for the driver's seat heating is assigned to the key in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating was on when you last switched off the ignition, it will be switched on automatically only if the ignition is switched on again within 10 minutes.

Supplementary heater

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

On cold days, the interior of the vehicle warms up more quickly with the supplementary electric heater. The supplementary heater is switched on automatically as required, depending on the setting on the vehicle heating system.

The “supplementary heater” function can be switched on or off as required. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **A/C** > **Auto supplementary heater**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving

General notes

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over a distance of 1,500 km. For the first 1,000 km the engine speed should not exceed 2/3 of the maximum permissible engine speed - do not use full throttle. From 1,000 to 1,500 km you can gradually increase the engine rpm and road speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

How the vehicle is driven for the first 1,500 km also influences the engine quality. After this period you should continue driving at moderate engine speeds, in particular when the engine is cold. This helps to reduce wear and tear on the engine and increases the potential mileage which can be covered by the engine.

You should also avoid driving with the engine speed too *low*. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs “smoothly”. Excessively high engine speeds are prevented by an automatic rev limiter.

Driving through water on roads

Please note the following in order to prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water (e.g. on flooded roads):

– The water level must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody.
– Do not drive faster than walking pace.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the braking effect can be delayed slightly due to moisture on the discs and brake pads. Applying the brakes carefully several times will remove the moisture and restore the full braking effect.

CAUTION

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

Note

– It is advisable to check the depth at the deepest point before approaching the water.
– Do NOT stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch off the engine before you are out of the water.
– Bear in mind that waves created by oncoming traffic could exceed the permissible wading depth of your vehicle.
– Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

How to improve economy and minimise pollution

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. The following section gives you some tips on lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time.

Anticipate well in advance

A car uses most fuel when accelerating. If you anticipate hazards and speed changes well in advance, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car slow down gradually **with a gear engaged**, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

Change gear early to save fuel

An effective way of saving fuel is to *change up quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel. Press the accelerator slowly and avoid using the “kick-down” feature. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Avoid driving at high speed

Avoid travelling at top speed. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Do not let the engine idle for longer than necessary

Engine idling periods are automatically reduced on vehicles with start/stop system*. On vehicles without start/stop system*, it is worthwhile switching off the engine at level crossings, for instance, or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a very long time to warm up when it is running at idling speed. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Regular servicing

Regular servicing can establish a basis for good fuel economy before you start driving. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A poorly maintained engine can consume up to ten percent more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** when filling the tank. **Oil consumption** depends to a great extent on the engine load and engine speed. It is quite normal that the oil consumption of a new engine only reaches its lowest level after a certain mileage. This means that the oil consumption can only be properly assessed after about 5,000 km. Depending on your personal driving style, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1,000 km.

Avoid short trips

The engine and emission control system need to reach their **proper working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses disproportionately more fuel. The engine only reaches its working temperature after about *four* kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

Check tyre pressures

Always make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct tyre pressures to save fuel. If the tyre pressures are just 0.5 bar too low, this can increase the fuel consumption by as much as 5 %. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases **tyre wear** and impairs handling.

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all through the year; they will increase fuel consumption by up to 10 %.

Avoid carrying unnecessary loads

Every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, so it is worth checking the luggage compartment occasionally to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

Save electrical energy

The engine drives the alternator to generate electricity. This means that fuel consumption rises when more power is required for electrical equipment. Switch off electrical equipment when it is not needed. Electrical equipment which uses a lot of electricity includes the blower (at a high setting), the rear window heating and the seat heating*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted as required to suit the driver.



Fig. 68 Lever on steering column

- Press the lever ⇨ *Fig. 68* down ⇨ ⚠.
- Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- Then push the lever towards the steering column until the catch engages.

⚠ WARNING

– Never adjust the position of the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving - this could cause an accident.
– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

You can use the START ENGINE STOP *button to switch on the ignition and start the engine.*



Fig. 69 Centre console: START ENGINE STOP button

Switching the ignition on/off

- To switch the ignition on/off, press the START ENGINE STOP button without the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or pedal (automatic gearbox). Diesel engines preheated when the ignition is switched

Starting the engine

- Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gear lever into neutral.
- Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to position P or N ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *Fig. 69*. The engine should start.
- Diesel engines can take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox) until the engine starts. The indicator lamp lights up while the glow plugs are preheating.

If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. Try to start the engine again.

Start/stop system

Please note the information on ⇨ *page 63, Start/stop system*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary.
– The brake servo and the power steering system work only when the engine is running. You need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle when the engine is switched off. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.

CAUTION

Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.

Note

– When starting from cold the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic tappets. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, it will be switched off automatically after a while. Please note that electrical equipment such as the exterior lighting will also be switched off.

Switching off the engine

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

▸ Stop the vehicle.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 69*.

Steering lock[1)]

The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button, move the selector lever to position P (on vehicles with automatic gearbox*) and open the driver's door.

The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine with the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Emergency Off function

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is still moving. Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or hold it in for longer than two seconds.

WARNING

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Otherwise the engine can be started or power-operated equipment such as the electric windows can be used. This could result in serious injury.

CAUTION

If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

After the engine is stopped the radiator fan may run on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. The fan may also start running again after some time if the coolant temperature rises due to a build-up of heat, ▶

1) This function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

or if the engine is hot and the engine compartment is heated up further by direct sunlight.

Driver messages

Switch off ignition before leaving car. Battery is being discharged

This message appears and the buzzer sounds if you open the driver's door while the ignition is switched on. Switch off the ignition to prevent the battery from being discharged.

Pressing start/stop button again will switch off engine.

This message appears if you press the START ENGINE STOP button while the vehicle is moving.

Engine start system: fault. Please contact workshop

A fault has occurred when starting the engine automatically (automatic start function). Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button to start the engine.

Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system cannot detect or identify the key. This can happen, for example, if the radio signal from the key is *obstructed* by a metal briefcase or similar, or if the key battery is weak. Electronic equipment, such as mobile phones, can also interfere with the radio signal from the key.

If you encounter any problems starting or stopping the engine, please refer to "What to do if the “START ENGINE STOP” button is inoperational" ⇨ *page 63*.

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the convenience key was removed from the vehicle while the engine was running. If the convenience key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press brake pedal

This message appears on vehicles with an automatic gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the brake pedal.

Please press clutch pedal

This message appears on vehicles with a manual gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the clutch pedal. The engine will only start if you press the clutch pedal.

Please engage N or P

This message will appear if you try to start or switch off the engine when the selector lever is not in N or P. The engine can then not be started or switched off.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P

For safety reasons, this message will appear and a warning buzzer will sound if the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is not in position P when you switch off the ignition with the START ENGINE STOP button. Put the selector lever in position P; otherwise the vehicle can roll away. If the lever is not in position P you will not be able to lock the vehicle using the locking sensor on the door handle or the convenience key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the engine after a malfunction

If the remote control key battery is exhausted or if radio interference or a system malfunction occurs, extra steps may be necessary in order to start the engine.



Fig. 70 Steering column/remote control key: Starting the engine after a malfunction

Starting the engine manually

If the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can still start the engine manually.

- Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal.
- Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the engine on page 61.*
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- Hold the remote control key against the symbol ⇨ *Fig. 70*, as shown in the illustration. The engine should start.
- If the engine does not start automatically, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Note

You can call up the driver message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/stop system

Description

Applies to vehicles: with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights. The ignition remains on during this stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Basic conditions for start/stop mode

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be buckled.
– The bonnet must be closed.
– The vehicle must have been moving at over 4 km/h since the last stop.

WARNING

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
– To avoid injury, make sure that the start/stop system is switched off before working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 65*.

CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system ⇨ *page 65* before driving through water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching off / starting the engine

Applies to vehicles: with start/stop system

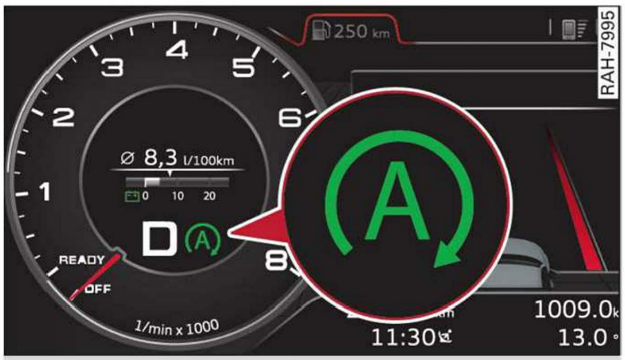


Fig. 71 Instrument cluster: Engine switched off (stop phase)

Vehicles with manual gearbox

- When the vehicle stops, put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear on the infotainment display.
- The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

- Stop the vehicle and keep your foot on the brake pedal. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear on the display.
- The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. If the hold assist* is switched on, the engine will not start until the accelerator is pressed. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will go out.

Further information for automatic gearboxes

The engine is switched off when the selector lever is in position P, D, N or S or in manual mode. If the selector lever is in position P, the engine will remain off even if you take your foot off the brake. The engine will not start again until you press the accelerator or select another gear and take your foot off the brake.

The engine will start again if you move the selector lever to R during a stop phase.

If you do not want the engine to start, move the selector lever quickly from D through R to P.

Note

- You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.
- On vehicles with manual gearbox, you should keep your foot on the brake during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
- If the engine stalls on a vehicle with manual gearbox, you can start it again directly by pressing the clutch pedal immediately.
- When you stop and the start/stop system turns off the engine, the ignition remains on. Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that the ignition is switched off; otherwise the battery will be drained.

General notes

The on-board control system can override the start/stop function for various reasons.

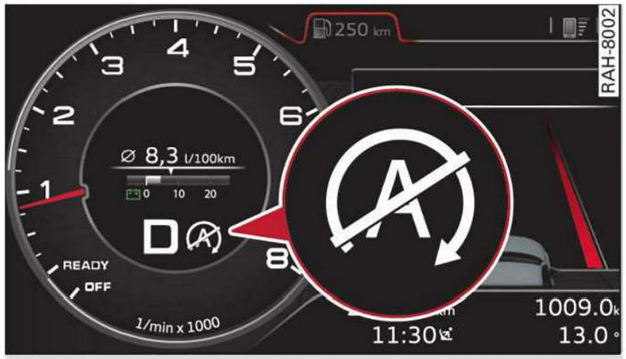


Fig. 72 Instrument cluster: Engine stop temporarily unavailable

Engine does not switch off

Before each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met. The engine will not switch off in the following situations, for example. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The engine has not yet reached the minimum temperature required for start/stop mode.
– The interior temperature selected on the air conditioner has not yet been reached.
– The exterior temperature is very high/low.
– The windscreen is being defrosted.
– The parking aid* or park assist* is switched on.
– The battery charge is too low.
– The steering wheel is close to full lock or the vehicle is being steered.
– Reverse gear has just been selected.
– The vehicle is on a steep gradient.

will appear in the infotainment display to indicate this status.

Engine cuts in again automatically

The stop phase is interrupted in the following situations, for example. The engine cuts in automatically without intervention from the driver.

– The vehicle starts to roll (e.g. on a hill).
– The interior temperature deviates from the air conditioner setting.
– The windscreen is being defrosted.
– The brake pedal is pressed several times in succession.
– The battery charge drops to an insufficient level.
– The power consumption is high.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the battery from being discharged, the ignition will be switched off **automatically** if certain conditions are met. For instance:

– The vehicle has already been driven.
– The start/stop system has switched off the engine.
– The driver's door is opened.
– The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not pressed.
– The vehicle is stationary.

If the dipped beam headlights are on when this happens, the side lights will be turned on instead and the message **Side lights will be automatically switched off in 30 minutes. See owner's manual** will appear on the infotainment display. After approx. 30 minutes, or when you lock the vehicle, the side lights will be switched off.

If the start/stop system has not stopped the engine or if you have switched off the start/stop system manually, the engine will continue running and the ignition will not be switched off automatically ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!

Note

If you select D, N or S (on vehicles with automatic gearbox) after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again.

Switching the start/stop system off and on manually

Applies to vehicles: with start/stop system

You can switch the system off manually if you don't want to use it.



Fig. 73 Centre console: Switch for start/stop system

▸ To switch the start/stop system off or on manually, press the button. The LED in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

Note

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

Automatic start/stop deactivated: please restart engine manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system **cannot** start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

Start/stop system: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Electro-mechanical parking brake

Operation

The electro-mechanical parking brake replaces the handbrake.



Fig. 74 Centre console: Parking brake

- To apply the parking brake, pull the switch ⇨ *Fig. 74*. The warning lamps in the button and in the infotainment display will light up.
- To release the parking brake, press the brake or accelerator pedal with the ignition switched on and simultaneously press the switch. The warning lamps in the switch and on the display will go out.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electro-mechanical parking brake. The parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake, and is mainly intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

However, the electro-mechanical parking brake also offers a number of convenience and safety features in addition to the functions of a normal handbrake.

When driving away

– The parking brake auto release function releases the parking brake automatically when you wish to start moving ⇨ *page 67, Driving away from a standstill*.
– When driving away on a gradient, the parking brake auto release function prevents the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally. The braking force of the parking brake is only released when there is enough power at the wheels to make the vehicle move in the desired direction.

Emergency braking function

An emergency braking function enables you to stop the vehicle even if the *conventional* foot brake should fail to work ⇨ *page 68, Emergency braking function*.

Warning lamps

– The warning lamps on the display and in the switch light up when the parking brake is applied with the ignition **switched on**.
– The warning lamps on the display and in the switch light up for approximately 20 seconds when the parking brake is applied with the ignition **switched off**.

WARNING

– The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately and possibly cause an accident.
– It is not possible to apply the parking brake if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, park the vehicle on a level surface and select 1st gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox) to prevent it from rolling. Obtain professional assistance. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– The parking brake can be applied at any time - even when the ignition is switched off. However, the ignition must be switched on and the brake pedal pressed before the parking brake can be released.
– The parking brake is applied automatically if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on. This is to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling away.
– Any slight noise which may be heard when the parking brake is applied or released is quite normal and no cause for concern.
– The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.
– If the warning lamp appears, there may be a parking brake malfunction ⇨ *page 11*.
– If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to release the parking brake (if it was applied) or to apply the parking brake (if it was released) ⇨ ⚠. Obtain professional assistance.

Parking the car

▸ Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a stop.
▸ To apply the parking brake, pull the switch ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 74*.
▸ Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
▸ Switch off the engine ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
▸ When parking on a hill or gradient, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move accidentally.

WARNING

– Always take the key with you when leaving your vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine, release the parking brake or use powered equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.
– Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Driving away from a standstill

The parking brake auto release function releases the parking brake automatically when you wish to start moving.

Applying the parking brake when stopping

▸ To apply the parking brake, pull the switch ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 74*.

Releasing the parking brake when driving away

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be buckled.

▸ Press the accelerator in the normal way: the parking brake will be released automatically and the vehicle will start moving.

You can apply the parking brake when stopping at traffic lights, etc. You do not then have to hold the car with the brake pedal, as the parking brake will stop it creeping forward while a gear is engaged in the automatic transmission. When you drive off in the normal way, the parking brake will be released automatically and the vehicle will start moving.

Driving away on a slope

When driving away on a gradient, the parking brake auto release function prevents the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally. The braking force of the parking brake is only released when there is enough power at the wheels to make the vehicle move in the desired direction.

Note

For safety reasons the parking brake will only release automatically if the driver's seat belt is engaged in its buckle and the driver's door is closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency braking function

This feature enables you to stop the vehicle if the main brake system should fail or if the pedal is obstructed.

- To stop the vehicle with the parking brake in an emergency, pull and hold the parking brake switch ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 74*.
- The brakes will be released immediately if you release the switch or press down the accelerator.

If you pull out and hold the parking brake switch at a road speed above about 3 km/h, this will initiate an emergency brake application. The brakes are then applied hydraulically at all four wheels. The effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To prevent the emergency braking function from being used accidentally, a warning buzzer sounds when the switch is operated. The brakes are released immediately when you release the switch or press down the accelerator.

⚠ WARNING

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function by activating the parking brake switch, this has the same effect as heavy braking. Please remember that the ESC (and the integrated ABS, EDL and traction control functions) is still subject to certain physical limits. In a corner or in bad road or weather conditions an emergency stop can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control.

Hold assist

Applies to vehicles: with hold assist



Fig. 75 Section of centre console: Button for hold assist

The hold assist helps the driver if the vehicle is stationary for a long period or very often, for instance at traffic lights, on steep gradients or in stop-and-go traffic.

Switching on the hold assist

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the driver's seat belt buckled and the engine running.

- Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 75* in the centre console to switch on the hold assist function. The LED in the button will light up.

Stopping with the hold assist

- Once it detects that the vehicle has stopped, the hold assist keeps the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Drive off in the normal way: the brake will be released automatically and the vehicle will start moving.

Switching off the hold assist

- Press the button to switch off the hold assist function. The LED in the button will go out.

In certain situations, the hold assist transfers the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake. As soon as the parking brake is holding the vehicle still, the warning lamp ■ appears in the instrument cluster.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology in the hold assist function cannot defy the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hold assist function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
– The hold assist cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a car wash.

Note

– The last setting of the hold assist (on/off) is restored when the ignition is switched on. The LED in the button is lit when the hold assist is on.
– Automatic gearbox: When the hold assist function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.
– In certain situations, the hold assist cannot hold the vehicle. The LED in the button will go out.

Hill hold assist

Applies to vehicles: with hill hold assist

The hill hold assist function makes it easier to drive away on a slope.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the seat belt buckled and the engine running.

The system is activated when you press and hold the brake pedal for **a few seconds**.

When you release the brake pedal the braking force will be maintained for a moment in order to hold the vehicle and make it easier for you to drive away.

WARNING

– The intelligent technology in the hill hold assist function cannot defy the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the hill hold assist function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
– The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).
– If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal the vehicle could start to roll back. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
– If the engine should stall you must immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
– If you are driving away on a slope in stop-and-go traffic press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds before driving off. This will prevent the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally.

Note

To find out whether your vehicle is equipped with the hill hold assist function please contact an Audi dealership or qualified workshop.

Kick-down feature

Applies to vehicles: with manual gearbox and efficiency mode

The kick-down feature is designed to give maximum acceleration.

If you press the accelerator right down past the point of resistance at full throttle when the drive select* function is set to **efficiency*** mode ⇨ *page 91*, the engine power is automatically controlled to give your vehicle maximum acceleration.

WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic gearbox

S tronic

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled dual-clutch gearbox (S tronic). Torque between the engine and the gearbox is transmitted via two independent clutches. They enable smooth, uninterrupted acceleration of the vehicle.

The gearbox shifts up or down automatically and continuously adapts the timing of the gear changes to your driving style.

When you drive at **moderate speeds** the gearbox will select the most economical shift programme. It will then change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy.

If you drive at **higher speeds** with heavy acceleration, if you open the throttle quickly, or if you use the kick-down or the car's maximum speed, the gearbox will automatically select the more “sporty” shift programmes.

If desired, you can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)**.

Selector lever positions

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

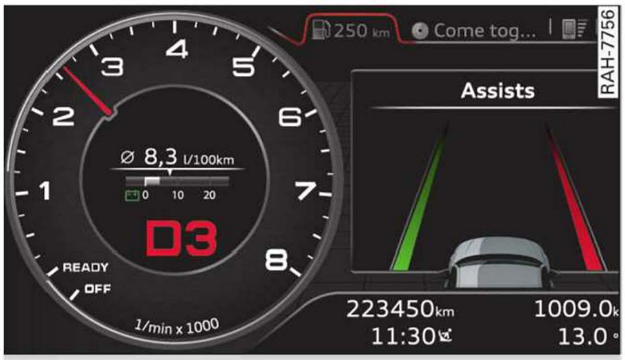


Fig. 76 Instrument cluster: Selector lever positions

The current selector lever position and the current gear are shown in the infotainment display.

P – Parking lock

When the selector lever is in this position, the driven wheels are locked mechanically. The parking lock must only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

The interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle) must be pressed in *and* the brake pedal must be depressed before moving the selector lever either in or out of position P.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear must only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is idling ⇨ ⚠.

To move the selector lever to position R, press in the interlock button *and* at the same time press the brake pedal. The reversing light comes on when the selector lever is in the R position with the ignition on.

N – Neutral

In this position, the gearbox is in neutral.

D/S – Drive/Sport (standard position for driving forwards)

In selector lever position D/S, the gearbox can be operated in either the standard drive mode (D) or in sport mode (S). To select sport mode (S), briefly pull the selector lever back. The gearbox will switch back to drive mode (D) if you pull the selector lever again. The selected driving mode is shown on the infotainment display.

In the standard **drive mode** (D), the gearbox automatically selects the best gear ratio. This depends on the engine load, the road speed and the driving style.

Select **sport mode** (S) if you wish to take full advantage of the car's performance. This setting makes use of the engine's maximum power output. When accelerating the gear shifts may be noticeable.

Press the brake pedal when moving the selector lever from N to D/S if the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 2 km/h ⇨ ⚠.

E – Efficiency*

In efficiency mode ⇨ *page 90, Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions)*, the gearbox selects ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the next gear at lower engine speeds. Earlier upshifts give improved fuel economy because the full power reserves of the engine are not used.

In this mode, E is shown on the display instead of D ⇨ *Fig. 76*.

WARNING

- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving, as this could cause an accident.
- In all selector lever positions except P the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep” - risk of accident!
- The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) and possibly cause an accident.
- Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the parking brake and engage the parking lock P.
- To avoid accidents, apply the parking brake and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 220, Working on components in the engine compartment*.

Note

- Drive select: You can select the sport program for gear changes by activating the **dynamic** mode. The infotainment display will show S instead of D.
- If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, take your foot off the accelerator and let the engine speed drop to idling before selecting D or S again.
- It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, the selector lever can be released manually. Left-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 78*, right-hand drive vehicles ⇨ *page 79*.

Selector lever lock

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, so that the vehicle is not set in motion unintentionally.

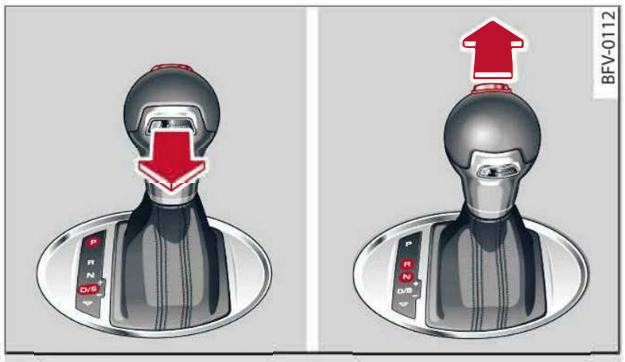


Fig. 77 Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the brake pedal *and* at the same time press in the interlock button.

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is on. To move the selector lever out of these positions the driver must press the brake pedal. To move out of position P, the interlock button must also be pressed. The following message appears in the display as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in position P or N:

To select a gear please press brake pedal and interlock button on gear selector lever ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The selector lever lock only works if the vehicle is stationary or driving at speeds up to 2 km/h. At higher speeds the selector lever lock in the N position is disengaged automatically.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position N (e.g. when shifting from R to D). This makes it possible, for instance, to "rock" the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position N for more than about two seconds.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever handle prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging particular gears. The illustration shows the selector lever positions in which the button has to be pressed, highlighted in colour ⇨ *Fig. 77*.

Note

– If the selector lever does not lock automatically, a malfunction has occurred. In this case, the power transmission is interrupted to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally. Proceed as follows to engage the selector lever lock again:
– Press the brake pedal briefly.
– If the vehicle does not move forwards or backwards even though a gear is selected, proceed as follows:
– If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may have failed to engage the gear correctly. In this case, press the brake pedal and select the gear again.
– If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, a system malfunction has occurred. Seek professional assistance and have the system checked.

General notes on driving an automatic

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

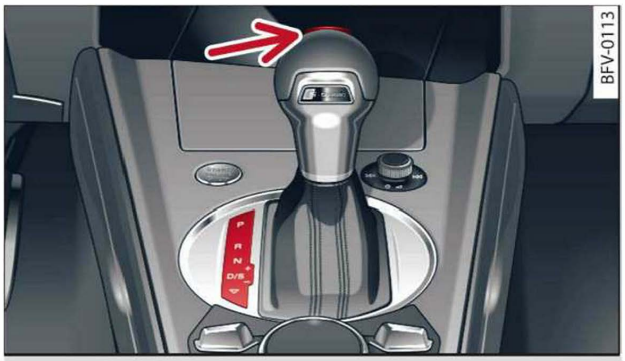


Fig. 78 Detail of the centre console: Selector lever with interlock button

The engine can only be started when the selector lever is in P or N. In the case of low outside temperatures (below -10 °C), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in position P.

Driving away from a standstill

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle), set the selector lever to the desired position (e.g. D) ⇨ *page 70* and release the interlock button.
- Wait for the gearbox to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).
- Release the brake and press the accelerator ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping briefly

- Press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle when stationary (for instance at traffic lights).
- Do not press the accelerator.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling away, apply the parking brake before moving off on steep gradients ⇨ ⚠.
- As soon as you accelerate as normal with your seat belt fastened, the parking brake will automatically be released and the vehicle will start moving.

Stopping/parking the car

If you open the driver's door while the selector lever is not in position P, the vehicle can roll away. The message **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle** ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P appears on vehicles with convenience key*. A buzzer will also sound.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to P.

Stopping on a slope

- ▸ *Always* keep your foot on the brake pedal to hold the vehicle and prevent it from rolling back down the slope ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to stop the vehicle “rolling back” by increasing the engine speed when a gear is engaged ⇨ (!).

Driving away on a slope (vehicles without hill hold assist* / Audi hold assist*)

- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Once you have engaged a gear press the accelerator carefully. The parking brake will be released automatically if you are wearing your seat belt.

Driving away on a slope (vehicles with hill hold assist*)

- ▸ Once you have engaged a gear, release the footbrake and press the accelerator ⇨ *page 69, Hill hold assist*.

Driving away on a slope (vehicles with hold assist*)

- ▸ Once you have engaged a gear, release the footbrake and press the accelerator ⇨ *page 68, Hold assist*.

In some situations (such as when driving on mountain roads) it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit the driving conditions ⇨ *page 75*.

On level ground it is sufficient to move the selector lever to P. On a gradient the parking brake should be applied first and the selector lever should be moved to P ⇨ *page 66*. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism and makes it easier to move the selector lever out of position P.

⚠ WARNING

- – The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the parking brake and engage the parking lock P.
- – If the engine is running and a gear is engaged (D/S or R) or the vehicle is in “tiptronic” mode, you will need to hold the car with the footbrake. Otherwise, the car will “creep” forwards as the power transmission is not fully interrupted even when the engine is idling.
- – The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) and possibly cause an accident.
- – Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- – Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- – Before you drive down a steep gradient, reduce the speed and use “tiptronic” to select a low gear.
- – Never allow the brake to drag when driving downhill and do not use the brake pedal too often or for long periods. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.
- – To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the footbrake or parking brake if you have to stop.
- – Never attempt to hold the vehicle with the clutch when stopping on a gradient. The clutch is disengaged automatically if it is overloaded and becomes too hot - accident risk! If the clutch is overloaded, the indicator lamp (!) will light up and a message will appear ⇨ *page 77*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION

– When you have stopped on a gradient, do not try to stop the vehicle rolling back by accelerating when a gear is engaged. This could cause the automatic gearbox to overheat and become damaged. Apply the parking brake or press the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
– If you allow the car to roll with the selector lever in position N with the engine switched off, the automatic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated.
– In certain driving and traffic conditions, for instance in stop-and-go traffic, if you have to pull away frequently or if the vehicle creeps forwards over a long distance, the gearbox can overheat and become damaged. If the warning lamp lights up, stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and let the gearbox cool down ⇨ *page 77*.
– In certain driving and traffic conditions, for instance in stop-and-go traffic, if you have to pull away frequently or if the vehicle creeps forwards over a long distance, the gearbox can overheat and become damaged. If the warning lamp lights up, stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and let the gearbox cool down ⇨ *page 77*.
– If you allow the car to roll with the engine switched off, the S tronic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated ⇨ *page 250, Tow-starting / towing away*.

Note

For safety reasons the parking brake will only release automatically if the driver's seat belt is engaged in its buckle.

Downhill speed control

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The downhill speed control function helps the driver when driving down steep gradients.

Downhill speed control is activated on a downhill gradient when the selector lever is in D/S and the driver presses the brake pedal. The gearbox automatically selects a suitable gear for the gradient.

The downhill speed control function attempts to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the foot brake was applied (subject to the laws of physics and technical limitations of the power train). It may be necessary to adjust the speed again using the foot brake. The downhill speed control can change down to 3rd gear but no further, so it may be necessary to change to tiptronic mode on very steep gradients. In this case, change down manually to 2nd or 1st gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine braking effect and reduce the load on the brakes.

Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with cruise control system* ⇨ *page 80*, downhill speed control is activated when you set a cruising speed.

WARNING

The downhill speed control function cannot defy the laws of physics and may therefore not be able to maintain a constant speed in certain circumstances. Always be prepared to use the brakes!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual gear selection (tiptronic mode)

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox/paddle levers

The tiptronic feature allows the driver to also change gears manually.

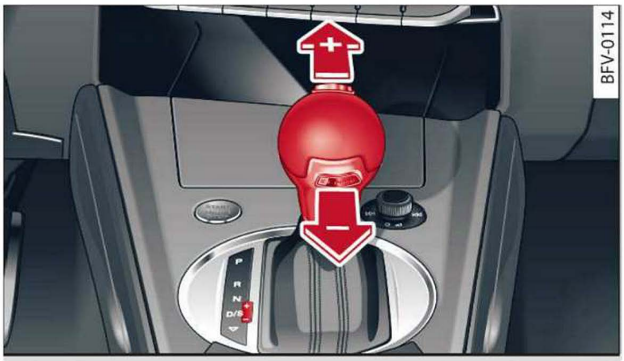


Fig. 79 Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever



Fig. 80 Steering wheel: Manual gear selection with paddle levers*

Gear selection with selector lever

The tiptronic mode can be selected either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- ▸ From position D/S, push the selector lever to the right into the tiptronic selector gate to activate tiptronic mode. As soon as the automatic gearbox has activated this mode, the letter **M** will appear on the infotainment display ⇨*page 70, Fig. 76*; e.g. **M4** means that the vehicle is in 4th gear.
- ▸ Briefly push the selector lever forwards ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 79* to change up a gear.
- ▸ Briefly pull the selector lever back ⊖ to change down a gear.

Gear selection with paddle levers*

You can use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in position D/S or **M** (= tiptronic selector gate).

- ▸ To shift up a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 80*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever ⊖.

If you use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in positions D/S, the gearbox will remain in manual mode for a while. To switch back immediately to automatic mode after changing gears manually, pull the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨*Fig. 80* for approximately 1 second.

If you want to use the paddle levers permanently, push the selector lever from position D/S to the right into the tiptronic selector gate.

The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.

Kick-down feature

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The kick-down feature is designed to give maximum acceleration.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed right down past the point of resistance at full throttle, the gearbox will shift down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed. The upshift to the next higher gear is delayed until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Coasting mode

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

In coasting mode, you can use the vehicle's kinetic energy to drive without using the accelerator on certain stretches of road. This saves fuel by allowing you to take your foot off the accelerator earlier and let the vehicle coast (for instance ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

when approaching a speed restriction in a built-up area).

Switching on coasting mode

Important: Selector lever must be in D, gradient must be less than 12 %.

- ▸ Select **efficiency** mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 90* (you only have to do this once).
- ▸ Take your foot off the accelerator.

If you have selected the "on-board computer" display, the message **Coasting** will then appear. The gearbox automatically disengages the clutch at speeds above 20 km/h and lets the vehicle coast without the engine braking effect. The engine ticks over at idling speed while the vehicle is coasting.

Stopping coasting mode

- ▸ Press the brake pedal or accelerator.

To use the engine braking effect and overrun fuel cut-off again, all you need to do is tap the brake pedal briefly.

You can improve your fuel economy and help to reduce emissions by using a combination of the **coasting mode** (i.e. coasting with low fuel consumption on a longer stretch of road) and the **overrun fuel cut-off** (i.e. using the engine braking effect with no fuel consumption on a shorter stretch of road).

WARNING

- – If you are approaching an obstruction when coasting mode is switched on, please remember that the vehicle will not slow down as quickly as usual when you take your foot off the accelerator - risk of accident!
- – The vehicle can pick up speed if you are driving down a slope in coasting mode - risk of accident!
- – If other people are using your car, you should draw their attention to the coasting mode.

Note

- – Coasting mode is only available in **efficiency** mode (drive select*).
- – The message **Coasting** only appears when the current fuel consumption display is selected. The gear is no longer displayed when you are in coasting mode (e.g. E instead of E6).
- – The coasting mode is deactivated temporarily on gradients of 15 % or greater.

Launch control programme

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox and launch control

The launch control programme enables maximum acceleration.

Important: The engine must be warm and the steering wheel must be pointing straight-ahead.

- ▸ Deactivate the start/stop system * ⇨ *page 65*. The LED in the button will light up.
- ▸ Deactivate the hold assist* ⇨ *page 68*. The LED in the button will go out.
- ▸ Press the OFF button once briefly while the engine is running [1].
- ▸ Briefly pull the selector lever back from position D/S to select position S, or move the selector lever to the right into the tiptronic gate, or select **dynamic** mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 90*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot until the engine revs are high and steady.
- ▸ Take your left foot off the brake. ▶

[1] The ESC lamp lights up permanently and the message **Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability** appears temporarily in the infotainment display to indicate the deactivation status.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.
– Only use the launch control programme when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your manner of driving and accelerating the vehicle does not inconvenience or endanger other road users.
– Please note that the driven wheels may start to spin when the sport mode is switched on, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads - danger of skidding!
– When acceleration has been completed, you should deactivate the sport mode again by briefly pressing the OFF button.

Note

– The gearbox may be hot after you have used the launch control programme. In this case, the programme may not be available for several minutes. The programme will be available again after a cool-down period.
– Accelerating with the launch control programme places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.

Back-up programme

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

A back-up programme is in place should a fault occur in the control system.

If all selector lever positions are highlighted in the infotainment display, a system malfunction has occurred. In this case, the S tronic gearbox will switch to a backup programme. The vehicle can still be driven in the backup programme, however only at reduced speed and not in all gears. In certain cases, you may not be able to select **reverse gear**.

CAUTION

If the gearbox switches to the back-up programme, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction

Gearbox malfunction! Please stop the vehicle and select P

There is a malfunction in the gearbox. Park the vehicle safely and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle

The gearbox is overheating and could be damaged. Stop the vehicle and let the gearbox cool down with the engine idling and the selector lever in position P. If the indicator lamp and the message disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Do not drive on if the warning lamp stays on and the message does not disappear. You should obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until engine off

Park your vehicle well away from moving traffic. Obtain professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

You can continue driving at moderate speed. You can resume normal driving if the indicator lamp goes out.

Gearbox: please press brake pedal and select gear again

If a gearbox malfunction has occurred due to overheating, this message will appear once the gearbox has cooled down again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Releasing the selector lever manually (left-hand drive vehicles)

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The selector lever can be released manually if the electrical power supply should fail.



Fig. 81 Selector lever: Removing the cover

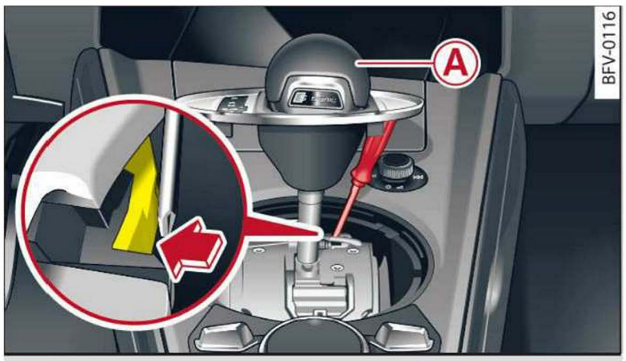


Fig. 82 Manually releasing the selector lever from position P

This section describes how to manually release the selector lever on left-hand drive vehicles.

The manual release mechanism is located on the right underneath the selector gate. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill. We therefore advise you to obtain professional assistance.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle's tool kit, which is located in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 242*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

Removing the selector lever cover

- Apply the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ ⚠ to prevent your vehicle from moving.
- Insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the gear lever boot and lever off the boot ⇨ *Fig. 81*.
- Take hold of the corners of the selector lever boot by hand and carefully turn it inside out over the gear knob ⇨ *Fig. 82*.

Releasing the selector lever manually

- Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with the screwdriver and hold it in place ⇨ *Fig. 82*.
- Now press the interlock button on the selector lever Ⓐ and move the selector lever to position N.
- After manually releasing the selector lever make sure you clip the gear lever boot back into the gearshift gate.

If the power supply should ever fail (discharged battery, etc.) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position N. This is possible after operating the manual release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

The selector lever must not be moved out of position P if the parking brake is not applied. If this is not possible, use the brake pedal to hold the vehicle. On a slope the vehicle could otherwise start to move inadvertently after shifting the selector lever out of position P – risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Releasing the selector lever manually (right-hand drive vehicles)

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic gearbox

The selector lever can be released manually if the electrical power supply should fail.



Fig. 83 Selector lever: Removing the cover

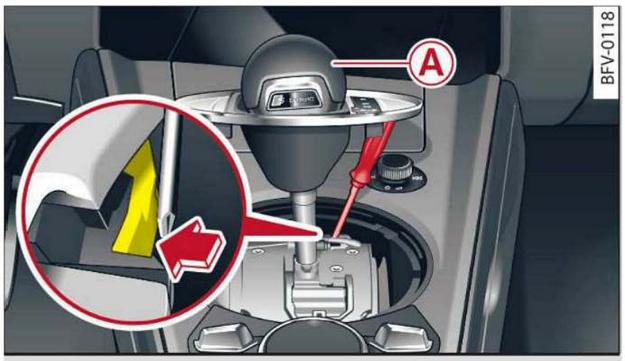


Fig. 84 Manually releasing the selector lever from position P

This section describes how to manually release the selector lever on right-hand drive vehicles.

The manual release mechanism is located on the right underneath the selector gate. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill. We therefore advise you to obtain professional assistance.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle's tool kit, which is located in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 242*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

Removing the selector lever cover

- Apply the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ ⚠ to prevent your vehicle from moving.
- Insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the gear lever boot and lever off the boot ⇨ *Fig. 83*.
- Take hold of the corners of the selector lever boot and carefully turn it inside out over the gear knob (1) ⇨ *Fig. 84*.
- Take out the panel for the selector lever position indicator and let it hang down to one side, suspended by the cable (1) ⇨ *Fig. 84*.

Releasing the selector lever manually

- Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with the screwdriver and hold it in place (2) ⇨ *Fig. 84*.
- Now press the interlock button on the selector lever (A) and move the selector lever to position N.
- After manually releasing the selector lever, make sure you fit the panel for the selector lever position indicator back in the selector gate and clip the gear lever boot back into place.

If the power supply should ever fail (discharged battery, etc.) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position N. This is possible after operating the manual release mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

The selector lever must not be moved out of position P if the parking brake is not applied. If this is not possible, use the brake pedal to hold the vehicle. On a slope the vehicle could otherwise start to move inadvertently after shifting the selector lever out of position P – risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver assist systems

Speed warning function

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with speed warning function

The speed warning function can help you keep below a pre-set maximum speed.

The speed warning function will warn you if the vehicle exceeds the pre-set maximum speed. The system gives an audible warning signal if the set speed is exceeded by about 3 km/h. The indicator lamp simultaneously appears on the infotainment display. The indicator lamp goes out when the speed drops below the set speed limit again.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

Note

– Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the statutory speed limits.
– On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a speed of 120 km/h. This speed limit warning is preset at the factory.

Setting speed limit warning

Applies to vehicles: with speed warning function

The infotainment system is used to set, alter or cancel the speed limit warning.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning**.

The speed limit warning can be adjusted in increments of 10 km/h between 30 and 240 km/h.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h or higher.



Fig. 85 Control lever for cruise control system



Fig. 86 Display: Selected speed

▸ Pull the lever to position (1) ⇨ *Fig. 85* to switch on the system.
▸ Drive at the speed you wish to set the system to.
▸ Press the button marked (A) to store the speed.

The display will indicate the stored speed ⇨ *Fig. 86*. The display can vary according to the display status. In addition, the indicator lamp will light up on the infotainment display.

A constant speed is maintained by adjusting the engine power or braking the vehicle accordingly.

WARNING

– Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the cruise control system. It is always the driver who is responsible for determining the speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in city traffic, stop-and-go traffic, on roads with a lot of bends or in difficult or slippery driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) - risk of accident!
– When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the cruise control system.
– Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator - this will override the cruise control system which, as a result, will not brake the vehicle.
– The automatic braking function may be deactivated if a system fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while the cruise control system is activated. All the other cruise control functions remain activated as long as the indicator lamp is lit.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and move the selector lever to a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

Note

– Vehicles with manual gearbox: The set speed cannot be reached if the currently selected gear is too high or too low or if the engine would overrev or fail to run smoothly at the target speed. Make sure to change up or down a gear in good time.
– The brake lights come on when the system brakes the vehicle.

Adjusting the speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

▸ To increase or reduce the cruising speed in steps of 1 km/h, **briefly push** the lever one level upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 80, Fig. 85*.
▸ To increase or reduce the cruising speed in steps of 10 km/h, **briefly push** the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 80, Fig. 85*.
▸ To increase or reduce the speed gradually, **hold** the lever towards ⊕/⊖ until you reach the desired cruising speed.

Overruling the set speed

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase speed in the normal way, for example to overtake another vehicle. Once you release the accelerator, the system will revert to the speed you stored initially.

However, if the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed significantly for a long time, the cruise control system will be deactivated temporarily. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster will go out, but the programmed speed will remain stored.

Pre-selecting a speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

You can pre-select a desired speed while the vehicle is stationary.

▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Pull the lever to position 1 ⇨ *page 80, Fig. 85*.
▸ Press the lever up towards ⊕ or down towards ⊖ in order to increase or reduce the cruising speed setting.

This function allows you to enter the desired cruise control setting speed ahead of time, for example before joining a motorway. Once you are on the motorway, you can activate the cruise control system by pulling the lever to position 1.

Switching off

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

Switching off temporarily

▸ Press the brake pedal, or
▸ Push the lever towards 2 (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 80, Fig. 85*.

Switching off completely

▸ Push the lever to position 2 (click stop engaged), or

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Switch off the ignition.

The speed setting will remain stored after the system is temporarily deactivated. To resume the programmed cruising speed, release the clutch or brake pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

The stored speed will be deleted once the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

Do not resume the programmed cruising speed if this is too high for the traffic conditions - this can cause accidents.

Speed limiter

Description

Applies to vehicles: with speed limiter

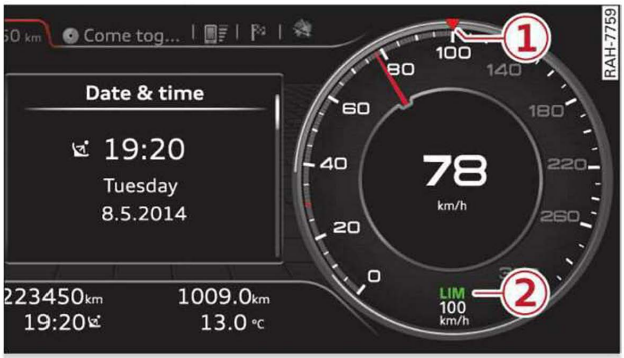


Fig. 87 Instrument cluster: Speed limiter display

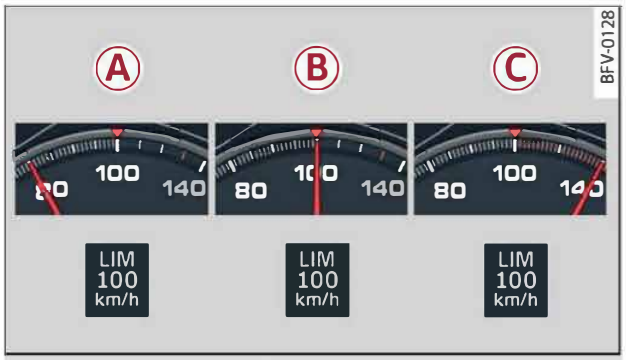


Fig. 88 Speed limiter: illustration

At speeds above approximately 30 km/h, the speed limiter helps prevent the driver from exceeding a set speed. The indicator lamp LIM lights up as soon as you switch on the speed limiter.

Speed limiter displays

Ⓐ - The speed limiter is activated, and the current vehicle speed is below the speed limiter setting.

Ⓐ - The speed limiter is activated, and the vehicle is maintaining the set speed. The indicator lamp LIM flashes briefly when the speed limiter is applied.

Ⓒ - When the accelerator pedal is pressed to the kick-down position, the function is deactivated and the speed limiter is switched off. The letters LIM ② flash as soon as the set speed is exceeded.

WARNING

Always switch the speed limiter off after use to prevent it from being activated unintentionally.

- Even when using the speed limiter, the driver maintains full responsibility for controlling the vehicle's speed.
- Using the speed limiter in adverse weather is dangerous and can result in a serious accident if you encounter heavy rain, snow, ice, wet leaves etc. You should only use the speed limiter if the road conditions and weather allow you to do so safely.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do do so safely.

CAUTION

Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and move the selector lever to a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to use the speed limiter

Applies to vehicles: with speed limiter

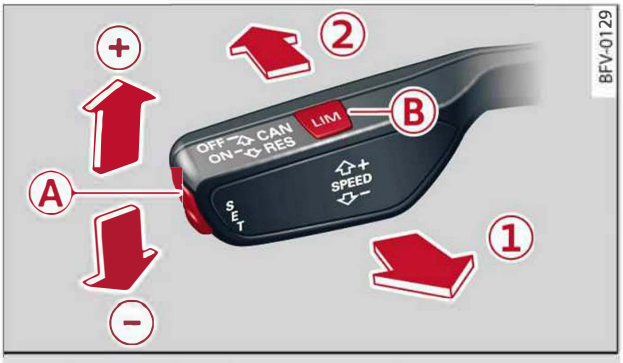


Fig. 89 Control lever for cruise control system



Fig. 90 Display: Selected speed

Speed limiter displays

Ⓐ - The speed limiter is in passive mode, but a speed has not yet been set.

Ⓑ - The speed limiter is in passive mode, and a set speed has been stored.

Ⓒ - The speed limiter is activated.

Overview of functions

Function	How to operate	Description
Switching on	If the lever is in position ② (engaged in OFF position), pull it towards ①.	The cruise control system and speed limiter are ready but have not been switched on yet. The vehicle is in cruise control mode.
Selecting the speed limiter	Press button Ⓑ.	The system switches to speed limiter mode, and the message LIM **Speed limiter: selected** appears as a confirmation.
Activating the speed limiter	Press button Ⓐ.	Your current driving speed is set as the maximum speed, and the speed limiter is activated.
Deactivating the speed limiter regulation temporarily	Push the lever towards ② (click stop not engaged).	Speed limiting is suspended temporarily. The speed setting will remain stored.
Reactivating the speed limiter	Pull the lever to position ①.	The vehicle speed is limited to the stored setting as soon as your current driving speed drops below the stored maximum speed.
Deactivating the speed limiter temporarily using the kick-down feature	Press the accelerator pedal down fully past the point of resistance (e.g. to overtake). The system is deactivated temporarily when you exceed the set speed.	Speed limiting is suspended temporarily. The indicator lamp LIM flashes while the system is deactivated; the speed setting will remain stored. The system is reactivated automatically as soon as your speed drops below the original stored setting. The indicator lamp LIM is lit continuously.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	How to operate	Description
Switching between the speed limiter and the cruise control (when the speed limiter is switched on)	Press button (B) on the lever.	The system switches between the speed limiter and the cruise control. The message **Cruise control: selected** appears as a confirmation. The last speed set remains stored and can be applied again when you switch back to the speed limiter.
Increasing the set speed	To increase the speed in steps of 1 km/h, briefly press the lever upwards (+) to the first level.	Your speed is limited to the set value.
	To increase the speed in steps of 10 km/h, briefly press the lever upwards (+) to the second level.	
Reducing the set speed	To reduce the speed in steps of 1 km/h, briefly press the lever downwards (-) to the first level.	Your speed is limited to the set value.
	To reduce the speed in steps of 10 km/h, briefly press the lever downwards (-) to the second level.	
Switching off the speed limiter	Press the lever to position (2) (click stop engaged), or switch off the ignition.	The system is switched off and the speed setting is erased.

Automatic deactivation

If it detects an error which could prevent the speed limiter from functioning properly, the system switches off automatically and the following message appears:

Speed limiter: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

Note

If a system fault requires the speed limiter to switch off automatically, for safety reasons it does not switch off completely until the driver releases the accelerator pedal once or deactivates the system manually.

Audi active lane assist (lane departure warning feature)

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

The active lane assist uses a camera in the windscreen to detect lane markings (subject to general system limitations). If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system corrects the steering to warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings. You can override this steering input at any time. The steering wheel vibrates slightly if you cross a lane marking. The vibration warning must be activated beforehand on the infotainment system. The active lane assist is functional when it detects a demarcation line on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

As the system is designed for driving on motorways and other major roads, it is only active above a speed of about 65 km/h (may vary in different export markets).

Applies to vehicles with side assist*: If you operate the turn signals while the active lane assist and side assist are active, the steering will be corrected just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist*: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

WARNING

- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn the driver that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. As the driver you are always responsible for staying in your own lane.
- The system can assist you to keep the vehicle in the lane, however it is not capable of driving on its own. Never take your hands off the steering wheel.
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering.
- In certain circumstances, not all of the lane markings may be detected by the camera. A corrective steering input can only be initiated if the system detects a lane marking on the side in question.
- Variations in the road surface or objects on the road may be misinterpreted as lane markings. In this case, the steering may be corrected unexpectedly or not at all.
- The camera's view might be obstructed, for example by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, a lot of water on the road, adverse light or dirt on the windscreen. If this happens, the active lane assist may not detect the lane markings or may respond incorrectly.
- In certain circumstances, for instance if visibility is poor, the setting for the steering input may be switched from “early” to “late” [1].
- In certain driving conditions, such as ruts in the road surface, adverse cambers or side winds, the assistance provided by the steering correction may be insufficient to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, the active lane assist must not be used in poor weather or in difficult or slippery road conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, snow, etc.) - risk of accident!

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 91 Turn signal lever: Button for active lane assist

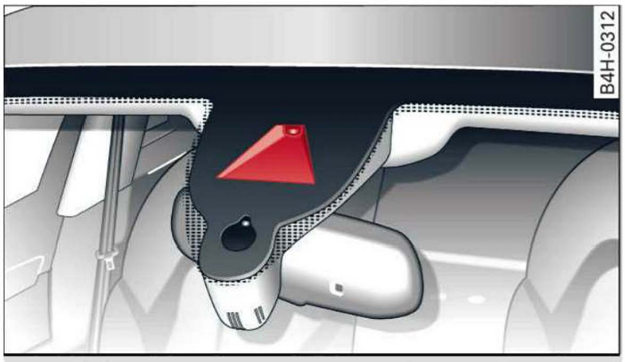


Fig. 92 Windscreen: Camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 91* to switch the system on/off. The indicator lamp or in the instrument cluster will light up or go out. ▶

[1] The steering input function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Indicator lamps

Ready: The indicator lamp lights up when the system is fully functional. The system is ready to intervene.

Not ready: The indicator lamp lights up when the system is switched on but not ready to intervene. The causes for this can include the following:

– There are no lane markings.
– The system cannot detect the relevant lane markings (e.g. temporary markings for road works or markings obscured by snow, dirt, rain or adverse light).
– The vehicle's speed is below 65 km/h, the speed at which the lane assist system is activated (the threshold may vary in different export markets).
– The lane is narrower than 2.1 m or wider than 5.5 m.
– The bend is too tight.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

Note

– Make sure that the camera window ⇨ *Fig. 92* is not covered with stickers or similar objects. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 236*.
– On vehicles for some export markets: once the system is activated, it is "ready" each time the ignition is switched on.

Infotainment display

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

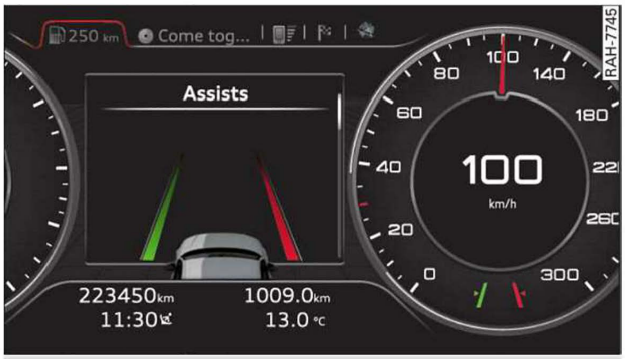


Fig. 93 Instrument cluster: active lane assist switched on and in warning mode



Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: active lane assist switched on but not ready for warning

You can use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to call up the active lane assist display ⇨ *page 18*.

Green line(s)	The active lane assist is switched on and ready to warn.
Red line(s) (left or right sides)	The active lane assist warns you before you cross the lane demarcation ⇨ *Fig. 93*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates slightly.
Grey line(s)	The active lane assist is switched on but not ready for warning ⇨ *Fig. 94*.

Driver messages on the infotainment display

Should the active lane assist be deactivated automatically, the indicator lamp on the display will go out and one of the following messages will appear:

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings.

This message is displayed when the camera is no longer functional after the system has continuously failed to detect the lane markings. This can have the following causes:

– The outside of the camera window ⇨ *page 85, Fig. 92* is dirty or frosted. Remove dirt or ice from this area of the windscreen.
– The inside of the camera window is misted up. In this case, wait for the camera window to demist before switching on the active lane assist system again.
– Due to the road conditions, the system has not been able to detect the lane markings for a ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

long period. Do not switch the active lane assist system on again before the lane markings are discernible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

A temporary fault is preventing the active lane assist system from functioning. Try switching on the active lane assist system again later.

Audi active lane assist: fault. See owner's manual

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Audi active lane assist: please take over steering

This message will appear if you do not steer the vehicle yourself. In this case, the active lane assist will switch to "not ready for warning" but will not be deactivated completely. The system can assist you to keep the vehicle in the lane. However it is your own responsibility to steer and control the vehicle.

Setting the steering input time and vibration warning

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

You can change the active lane assist settings on the infotainment system to suit your individual preferences.

Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Steering input[1)]

early: If this setting is selected, a continuous steering input assists the driver to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.

late: If this setting is selected, the steering is not corrected until just before a wheel touches a detected lane marking.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional steering wheel vibration warning on/off.

Note

Your personal settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key which is being used (only applies to some countries).

Audi side assist (lane change assist feature)

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

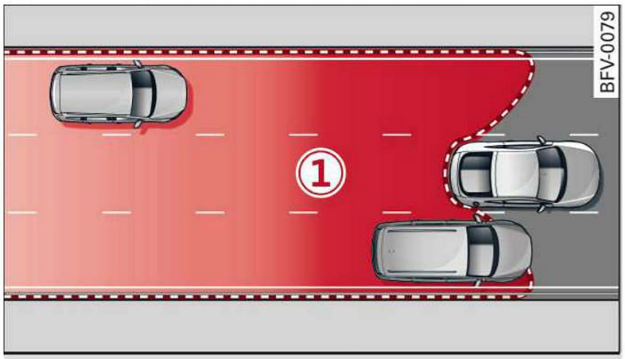


Fig. 95 Area covered by the radar sensors



Fig. 96 Warning lamp on exterior mirror

The side assist function assists the driver in monitoring following traffic and the blind spots on both sides of the car. Within certain system limits, it warns you if it detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle in the area covered by the sensors (1) ⇨ *Fig. 95*: if it judges a lane change to be ▶

1) The steering input function is not available on all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

critical, the warning lamp (2) on the exterior mirror lights up ⇨ *Fig. 96*.

The warning lamp on the left-hand mirror assists the driver when changing lane towards the left and the warning lamp on the right-hand mirror assists the driver when changing lane towards the right.

Information mode

As long as you do not operate the turn signal, the side assist will merely *inform* you of the presence of vehicles that it has detected and judges to be critical. In this case, the warning lamp on the relevant exterior mirror will light up at low intensity.

The intensity of the warning lamp in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

If you operate the turn signal, the side assist will *warn* you if it registers what it judges to be a critical vehicle. In this case, the warning lamp on the relevant exterior mirror will flash brightly. Please check the situation in the exterior mirror and by looking back over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 89*.

Note

You can adjust the brightness of the warning lamp on the exterior mirror ⇨ *page 90*.

General notes

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

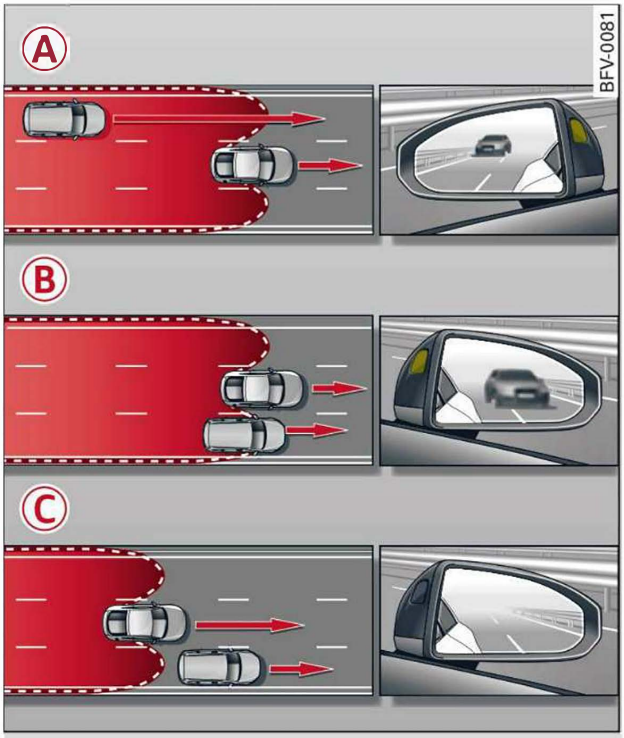


Fig. 97 Driving situations



Fig. 98 Rear of vehicle: Location of the sensors (example)

The side assist is active above a speed of about 30 km/h.

(A) Vehicles approaching from behind

In certain cases, a vehicle is judged to be critical in the event of a lane change even if it is still some distance away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the earlier the warning will appear on the exterior mirror.

(B) Vehicles moving at a similar speed

The warning lamp in the relevant exterior mirror will warn you of vehicles that are moving with the flow of traffic at about the same speed as you if they are judged to be critical in the event of a ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lane change. In all cases, the side assist will give a warning for the vehicles it has detected at the latest when they enter the “blind spot”.

© Other vehicles being overtaken

When you are overtaking another vehicle slowly, with a speed differential of less than 15 km/h, the warning lamp in the exterior mirror will light up as soon as the other vehicle enters your blind spot.

If you are overtaking another vehicle quickly, with a speed differential of more than 15 km/h, the warning lamp will not light up.

System limitations

The radar sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations the warning lamp on one of the exterior mirrors may light up even if no vehicle is travelling in an area that could be critical in the event of a lane change. For example:

– When you are travelling in a narrow lane or when you are not travelling in the centre of the lane. In this case the system may monitor another lane and register a vehicle that is *not* in fact travelling in an adjacent lane.
– When you are driving into a bend. The side assist may react to a vehicle two lanes away.
– If the system detects other objects (such as crash barriers, etc).
– In poor weather conditions. The functionality of the side assist is then restricted.

The radar sensors ⇨ *Fig. 98* must not be obstructed by stickers, bicycle racks, deposits or any other substances which could impair the function of the system. For notes on cleaning, please refer to ⇨ *page 236*.

WARNING

– Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The side assist feature is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver. The driver is always responsible for the safety of lane changes and other manoeuvres.
– In certain situations, the system may not function properly, or the functionality of the system may be restricted. For example:
  – If other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly. The warning lamp may not light up in time.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or road spray.
  – If you are travelling in very wide lanes, in tight bends or over crests. The system may not detect vehicles in the adjacent lane because they are outside the area covered by the sensors.

CAUTION

Impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel arches or underbody can cause misalignment of the sensors. This can impair the functionality of the system. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

The warning lamps on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

The system can be switched on and off on the infotainment system.

▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The warning lamps in the exterior mirrors light up briefly each time the ignition is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting brightness of warning lamp

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

The brightness of the warning lamp can be adjusted on the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The brightness of the warning lamp in both the information and warning modes is regulated automatically according to the ambient light level. If you are in very dark or very light surroundings when you adjust the brightness of the warning lamp, the automatic brightness control may already have reached the lowest or the brightest setting. In such a case it is possible that you won't notice a difference while you are adjusting the brightness or that you will only notice it once the light surroundings have changed.

Please adjust the brightness of the warning lamp for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. When you change the brightness, the warning lamp on the exterior mirror will light up briefly with the intensity set for the information mode. The intensity of the lamp in the warning mode is linked to the intensity in the information mode and is adjusted automatically.

Note

- The side assist is not active while the settings are being adjusted.
- Your personal settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key which is being used.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

Should the side assist be deactivated automatically, a driver message will appear on the infotainment display.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensors are blocked. The area in front of the sensors must not be obstructed by bicycle racks, stickers, deposits or any other substances. If necessary, clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 88, Fig. 98.*

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The side assist is temporarily inoperative and cannot be switched on (for instance if the battery is not sufficiently charged).

Audi side assist: fault. Please contact workshop

The system cannot detect vehicles reliably and will be deactivated. The sensors are out of alignment or defective. Have the system checked by a qualified workshop soon.

Audi drive select (vehicle set-up functions)

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. The four modes **efficiency***, **comfort**, **auto** and **dynamic** allow the driver, for example, to change from a sporty mode to a more comfortable one via the drive select button in the centre console or via the infotainment system. In addition, the **individual** mode allows you to adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic engine set-up with a lighter steering response.

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

The possible vehicle set-up in each mode depends on which equipment is installed on your vehicle. The engine and steering are basic parts of your vehicle which are always included in the set-up.

Engine and automatic gearbox*

The response of the engine and automatic gearbox* to accelerator pedal movements will be more spontaneous or balanced, depending on which mode you select. In efficiency* mode the automatic gearbox* selects the next gear at ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lower engine speeds and the coasting mode is activated ⇨ *page 75*. This helps to reduce fuel consumption.

Suspension control (Audi magnetic ride)*

The suspension control uses sensors to collect information on steering movements, braking and acceleration input by the driver, road surface quality, road speed and vehicle loading. With drive select you can choose between dynamic and comfort-oriented suspension set-ups (dynamic and comfort modes), or opt for a more balanced set-up (auto mode).

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. Various modes are possible ⇨ *page 92*.

The steering response is even more agile on vehicles with progressive steering*.

Air conditioner*

The air conditioner runs in a particularly economical mode when the efficiency* setting is selected. When this function is selected, **eco*** is shown in the display of the automatic air conditioner.

Cruise control system*

The acceleration response is particularly economical in efficiency* mode.

Note

– On vehicles with manual gearbox, an **E** appears in the gear-change indicator when efficiency* mode is activated.
– On vehicles with automatic gearbox, if you select efficiency* mode when the selector lever is in position D, **E** will automatically appear on the infotainment display.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

You can choose between efficiency, comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.*



Fig. 99 Centre console: Button for drive select

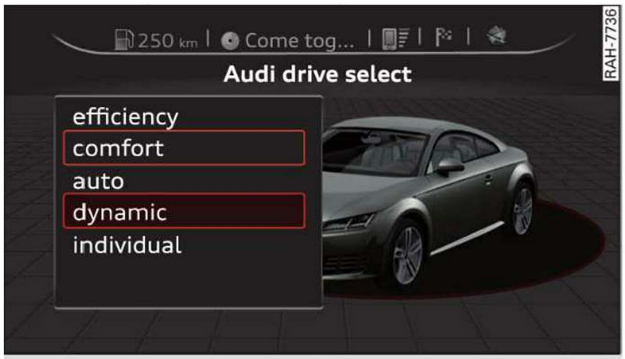


Fig. 100 Infotainment: Drive select

▸ Press the button ⇨ *Fig. 99*, or
▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.
▸ Move the cursor (red frame) to select the desired setting.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the engine.

efficiency* - trims the vehicle to an especially fuel-saving set-up and helps the driver adopt an economical driving style.

comfort - alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride.

auto - gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride and is a good choice of set-up for everyday use. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dynamic - gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving.

individual - ⇨ *page 92*.

The last selected mode is still active when you re-start the vehicle.

WARNING

Always keep an eye on the traffic when using the drive select controls - Risk of accident!

Configuring individual mode

You can configure your own personal vehicle set-up.

- ▸ Press the button ⇨ *page 91, Fig. 99* > **individual** > right control button, or:
- ▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Audi drive select** > **individual** > right control button.

The **individual*** driving mode will automatically be activated when you have finished configuring the settings.

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select. The following table provides an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine and **Gearbox**	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Steering	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Suspension control*	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic
Engine sound*	Subdued	Balanced	Dynamic
quattro*	Comfortable	Balanced	Dynamic

Note

Your settings in **individual*** mode are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key currently in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking aids

General notes

Applies to vehicles: with rear parking aid/parking system plus/park assist

Various systems are available to help you when parking or manoeuvring in tight spaces, depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle.

The **rear parking aid** gives an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles *behind* the car ⇨*page 93*.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and optically about obstacles detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨*page 94*. On vehicles with **park assist**, the area detected at the side of the vehicle Ⓔ ⇨*page 94, Fig. 101* is also monitored.

The **park assist** helps you to find suitable parking spaces, to manoeuvre the vehicle into spaces parallel or perpendicular to the roadside and to drive out of spaces parallel to the kerb ⇨*page 95*.

WARNING

- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The electronic systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Please note that certain surfaces, such as clothing fabrics, cannot be detected or displayed by the system - risk of accident!
- Sensors have blind spots in which neither people nor objects are registered. It is particularly important to ensure that there are no small children or animals near the vehicle - risk of accident!
- Always keep a close watch on the area around the vehicle and make full use of the rear-view mirrors.

CAUTION

- The system may not always be able to detect objects such as the following:
  - Chains, trailer draw bars, posts or fences
  - Objects above the sensors, such as wall protrusions, etc.
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire fences or powder snow
- As your car moves closer to low obstacles, they may disappear from the sensors' field of vision. Please note that you will no longer be warned about these obstacles.
- Impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arches or underbody can cause misalignment of the sensors. This can impair the effectiveness of the parking aids. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Note

- In certain situations, a warning may be given by the system even if there is no obstacle within range of the sensors. This can be caused by the following, for instance:
  - Certain road surfaces or long grass
  - External ultrasound sources, e.g. from street cleaning vehicles
  - Heavy rain or snow or dense exhaust fumes
- To familiarise yourself with the system, we recommend that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.
- You can adjust the volume of the beeps.
- To ensure that the acoustic parking aid works properly, the sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice.
- There is a slight delay in the picture display.

Rear parking aid

Description

Applies to vehicles: with rear parking aid

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system.

Description

Sensors are located in the rear bumper. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 236*.

The measuring range of the sensors starts at about:

Rear	Side	0.90 m
	Centre	1.60 m

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 93*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 93*!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m).

Activating

The rear parking aid is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus/park assist

The parking system plus provides acoustic and visual assistance when parking.

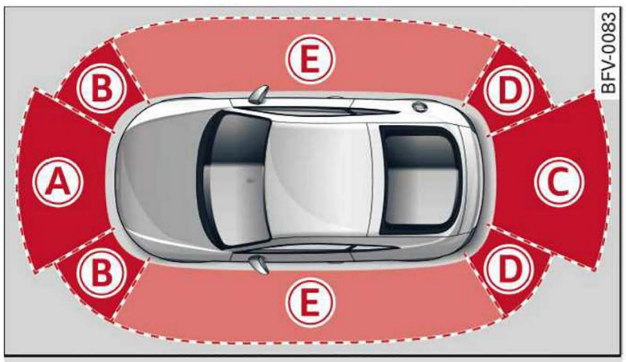


Fig. 101 Diagram

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a graphic display.

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 236*.

Approximate range for each display zone:

Ⓐ	1.20 m
Ⓑ	0.90 m
Ⓒ	1.60 m
Ⓓ	0.90 m
Ⓔ*	0.90 m[a)]

a) Applies to vehicles with park assist

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle (or less than approx. 0.20 m away in zone Ⓔ*). Stop moving immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 93*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 93*!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m).

Note

Zone Ⓔ* is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch on the ignition or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while or a door is opened, the ambient surroundings may have changed. Zone Ⓔ* is displayed in black on the infotainment system for this reason.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus



Fig. 102 Centre console: Switch for parking aid



Fig. 103 Proximity graphic (vehicles with park assist*)

Switching on

- ▸ Engage reverse gear, or
- ▸ Press the P switch in the centre console ⇨ *Fig. 102*. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the switch will light up.

Automatic activation

The parking aid is activated automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle from a distance of approx. 90 cm at speeds below 10 km/h. You will hear the warning beeps when the obstacle is within a distance of approx. 50 cm.

Switching off

- ▸ Drive forwards faster than 10 km/h, or
- ▸ Press the P switch, or
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.

Segments in the graphic display

You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) or the segments surrounding the vehicle (vehicles with park assist*) ⇨ *Fig. 103*. The red lines indicate the anticipated path of the vehicle, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment indicates an obstacle that has been detected beyond the path of travel. Red segments represent objects detected within the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 93*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 93*!

Park assist with 360° display

Description

Applies to vehicles: with park assist

The park assist helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of parking spaces.

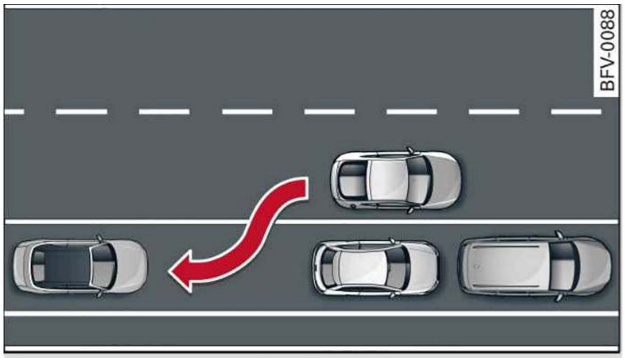


Fig. 104 Diagram: Parking parallel to the roadside

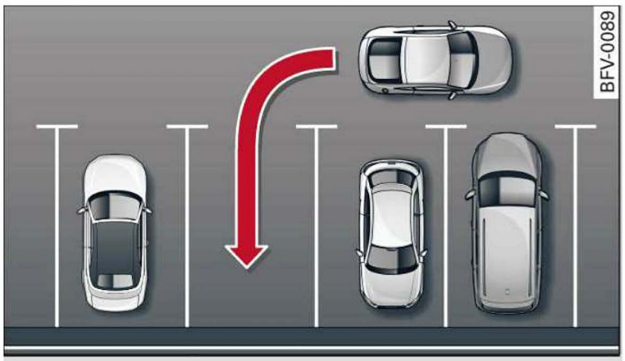


Fig. 105 Diagram: Parking perpendicular to the roadside

The park assist helps you to find suitable parking spaces, to manoeuvre the vehicle into spaces parallel or perpendicular to the roadside and to drive ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

out of spaces parallel to the kerb. The parking space can be located between two vehicles or behind one vehicle. The park assist takes over the steering while the driver is parking the vehicle in the usual way.

The parking system plus is an integral component of the park assist ⇨ *page 94* and helps you during the parking manoeuvre.

The park assist sensors are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers. Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 236*.

In short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

WARNING

– Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on page 93*.
– Please note that the park assist only handles the steering. As the driver you are always responsible for braking and accelerating.
– It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
– The front of the vehicle swings out during the parking manoeuvre. Please take all necessary measures to ensure that other road users are not endangered.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injury may result if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

CAUTION

– Please observe the safety warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General notes on page 93*.
– In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims.
– Certain conditions in and around the parking space can cause unexpected results when parking.
– Objects such as pillars, posts, etc. Road surfaces such as loose gravel, snow, ice, etc.

CAUTION

– The sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer draw bars, thin rails, fences, posts, waste bins and trees, etc. This could result in damage to your car.
– Please note that the system may not always be able to detect the surface of certain objects or substances, such as wire fences or powder snow, etc. You should therefore check that the parking space is really large enough before parking the vehicle.
– Please note that low obstacles detected by the system may no longer be registered by the sensors as the car moves closer, so the system will not give any further warning. Failure to respond to a parking system warning can result in damage to your vehicle and other property. Please bear this in mind, for example, when using the park assist to park behind a truck. Always keep a close watch on the area in front of and behind the vehicle while parking, and intervene promptly if necessary.
– To prevent damage to the sensors when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or a steam cleaner, do not hold the cleaner less than 10 cm away from the sensors and do not keep the cleaner pointed directly at the sensors.

Note

– The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 104*.
– The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle on tight bends.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with park assist



Fig. 106 Centre console: Switch for park assist

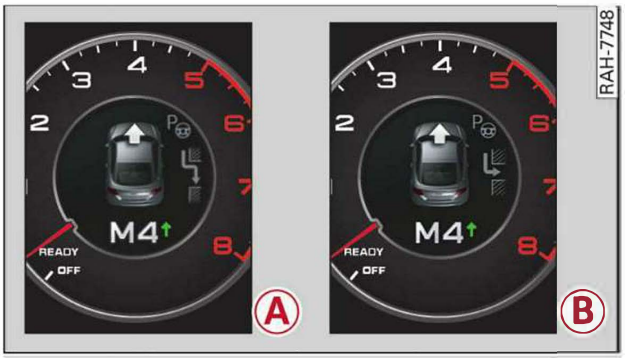


Fig. 107 Instrument cluster: Looking for a parking space. Ⓐ parallel to the roadside, Ⓑ perpendicular to the roadside

- To park parallel to the roadside, press the button once ⇨ *Fig. 106*. Display Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 107* will appear on the infotainment system. Or:
- To park perpendicular to the roadside, press the button twice. Display Ⓑ will appear.
- The LED in the button is lit if the park assist is switched on.
- To switch off the park assist, press the button. The LED in the button will go out.

Looking for a parking space

Applies to vehicles: with park assist



Fig. 108 Instrument cluster: Prompt to keep driving forwards (a parking space has been detected)

The section below describes how to park parallel to the roadside. The procedure for parking perpendicular to the roadside is similar.

Important: For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.

- Activate the turn signal for the side on which you want to park.
- To park parallel to the roadside, drive forwards at not more than 30 km/h. Or:
- To park perpendicular to the roadside, drive forwards at not more than 20 km/h.
- The system will display a parking space when it finds one ⇨ *Fig. 108*. Please check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle.

If you exceed a speed of about 50 km/h, the park assist will be switched off.

The park assist will display a parking space only if it is long and wide enough for the vehicle.

If you operate the left turn signal, the display will show the left side of the road (and vice-versa).

Note

– You can activate the park assist after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press the button and operate the turn signal. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The best parking results will be achieved if you position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or the kerb before you start the actual parking manoeuvre.
– If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals to park on the other side, even if you have already activated the park assist.

Parking parallel to the roadside

Applies to vehicles: with park assist

The driver is responsible for parking the vehicle.



Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: Prompt to select reverse gear



Fig. 110 Instrument cluster: Manoeuvring into a parking space

- ▸ Drive forwards until the arrow is displayed ⇨ *Fig. 109* ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 96*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Description on page 96*.
- ▸ After stopping for a moment, select reverse gear.
- ▸ Wait until the following text appears in the display: **Park assist: steering assistance active. Please drive slowly and operate the brakes yourself**.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator gently ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 96*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Description on page 96*.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the display ⇨ *page 99* and the acoustic warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete. The arrows show the required direction of travel.

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals (accelerator, brake, clutch*). The maximum parking speed is 7 km/h. The park assist will be deactivated if you drive too fast or move the steering wheel by hand. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again. The park assist display will reappear in the instrument cluster.

Driving out of a parking space parallel to the roadside

Applies to vehicles: with park assist

The driver is responsible for manoeuvring the vehicle out of the parking space.

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, the park assist can help you to manoeuvre the vehicle so that you can drive straight out of the parking space.

- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Press the button ⇨ *page 97, Fig. 106*.
- ▸ Wait until the following text appears on the infotainment display: **To leave parking space select reverse gear and operate turn signal**.
- ▸ Operate the appropriate turn signal.
- ▸ Engage reverse gear.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator gently ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 96*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Description on page 96*.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the display ⇨ *page 99* and the acoustic warning tones until you are clear to leave the parking space.
- ▸ The procedure is over when no more manoeuvring is necessary in order to drive out of the space. Take over the steering.

The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals (accelerator, brake, clutch*). The ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h. The park assist will be deactivated if you drive too fast or move the steering wheel by hand. To continue the parking manoeuvre, switch the engine off/on. Then press the button again. Alternatively, drive out of the parking space without using the park assist.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with park assist

Park assist: steering assistance active. Please drive slowly and operate the brakes yourself

The park assist is ready. You can now park the vehicle. Watch the road ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 96*.

Park assist: ended.

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering.

The park assist has finished the parking manoeuvre.

Park assist: cancelled. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist has interrupted the parking manoeuvre.

Park assist: cancelled. Steering input detected. Continue steering vehicle!

The steering assistant has been deactivated because the driver has intervened in the steering. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again.

Reduce your speed! For the best results when passing the line of parked cars where you want to park, do not drive faster than 30 km/h (if parking parallel to the roadside) or 20 km/h (if parking perpendicular to the roadside) ⇨ *page 97*.

Park assist: cancelled. Speed too high. Continue steering vehicle!

You were driving too fast into the parking space. Do not exceed 7 km/h when driving into the parking space.

Park assist: currently unavailable. Stabilisation control (ESC) off

Switch the ESC on to use the park assist.

To leave parking space select reverse gear and operate turn signal.

The park assist is ready. You can leave the parking space. Watch the road ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 96*.

Park assist: cancelled. Stabilisation control (ESC) input. Continue steering vehicle!

Take over the steering. Finish parking without the park assist or drive out of the parking space.

The park assist has interrupted the parking manoeuvre, because the ESC has been switched off. Take over the steering or switch on the ESC ⇨ *page 104* and start the parking manoeuvre again ⇨ *page 97*.

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering and continue driving.

The park assist has finished manoeuvring the vehicle out of the parking space. Please take over the steering.

Park assist: cancelled. Space too small

The assist function is unable to automatically steer the vehicle out of the parking space because the space is too small. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of the parking space without using the park assist.

Park assist: time limit exceeded

Park assist: cancelled. Time limit exceeded. Continue steering vehicle!

The parking manoeuvre was not completed within about six minutes after the park assist was activated. To continue the parking manoeuvre, press the button again.

Park assist: currently unavailable

Park assist: currently unavailable. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle. Try repeating the parking manoeuvre or switching the ignition off and on again. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Park assist: not stopped long enough

After you select reverse gear, the vehicle has to remain stationary for a moment so that the park assist can activate the steering. Follow the directions given in the display.

Park assist: fault. Please contact workshop

Park assist: fault. Continue steering vehicle! Please contact workshop

Please contact a qualified workshop. The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle if a system fault occurs.

Park assist: cancelled. Space too small. Continue steering vehicle!

The park assist cannot be used to park the vehicle in this space. Park the vehicle without using the park assist or look for a bigger space.

Park assist: stabilisation control (ESC) input

The detected space could not be used because the stabilisation control intervened.

Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus/park assist

The settings for the graphic display and acoustic signals are controlled via the infotainment system.

- Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Warning beeps

Front volume - Volume for the front and side* zones

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone

In-car entertainment fader - The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is switched on.

You will hear a short test tone each time you make a new setting.

Note

The settings will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use.

Fault warnings

Applies to vehicles: with rear parking aid/parking system plus/park assist

Rear parking aid: fault. Obstacles cannot be detected

Front parking aid: fault. Obstacles cannot be detected

Parking aid: fault. Obstacles cannot be detected

If the LED in the P button starts flashing when you switch the system on, a system fault has occurred. If the fault is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, it will only be indicated by the flashing LED in the P button the next time you switch on the parking aid by engaging reverse gear. The fault warning can be displayed in the second tab of the driver information system as long as the fault is active.

Parking system plus*/parking system plus and park assist*

If a sensor or loudspeaker malfunctions, the P symbol will be shown on the infotainment system in front of or behind the vehicle. If a rear sensor malfunctions, obstacles will only be displayed in zones Ⓐ and Ⓑ ⇨ *page 94, Fig. 101*. If a front sensor malfunctions, obstacles will only be displayed in zones Ⓒ and Ⓓ.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Intelligent technology

Electro-mechanical power steering

Electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering.

The degree of power assistance is adapted *electronically*, depending on the speed.

If the power steering should fail at any time or the engine is switched off (for instance when being towed), the car can still be steered. However, substantially more effort than normal will be required to turn the steering wheel.

Warning/indicator lamps and driver messages

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

If the warning lamp lights up permanently and the message appears, there may be a power steering failure.

Do **NOT** drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on.

Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Obtain professional assistance.

Steering: fault. You can continue driving

If the indicator lamp lights up, the steering response may be heavier or lighter than usual. In addition, it is possible that the steering wheel will be off centre when driving in a straight line.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the system malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop as soon as possible – risk of accident!

Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp or lights up only briefly.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

Wear

The rate of wear on the **brake pads** depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. Negative factors are, for instance, city traffic, frequent short trips or hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

Effect of moisture and salt

In certain conditions, such as in heavy rain, or after washing the car or driving through water, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads. The brakes should be “dried” by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

When you are driving at higher speeds with the windscreen wipers on, the brake pads are very briefly brought into contact with the brake discs. This automatic process which goes unnoticed by the driver is carried out at regular intervals and is intended to improve braking response in wet conditions. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The effectiveness of the brakes can also be temporarily reduced if the car is driven for some distance without using the brakes when there is a lot of salt on the road in winter. The layer of salt that accumulates on the discs and pads can be removed with a few cautious brake applications.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages without using the brakes very much.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If the brake pedal travel should ever increase *suddenly*, this may mean that one of the two brake circuits has failed. Drive immediately to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. On the way to the dealer, be prepared to use more pressure on the brake pedal and allow for longer stopping distances.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running.

WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).

CAUTION

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This overheats the brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and move the selector lever to a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. If you still have to use the brakes, it is better to brake firmly at intervals than to apply the brakes continuously.

Note

- If the brake servo is out of action, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.
- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the front wheels is not obstructed, otherwise the brakes can overheat.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster starts flashing as soon as the ESC intervenes.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes. You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can shorten the braking distance. The braking force is automatically boosted if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. You must keep pressing the brake pedal until the danger has passed.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the engine torque to match the amount of grip available. This helps the car to start moving, accelerate or climb a gradient.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheel and directs the power to the other driven wheel (or wheels on quattro* versions). This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilise the vehicle by changing the steering wheel torque.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control intervenes when cornering by braking the wheel(s) on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering. The relevant system may not intervene in the wet or snow.

Multicollision brake assist system

The “multicollision brake assist system” can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place upwards of a certain speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator,
– the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system,
– or the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

WARNING

– The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
– Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
– When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.

Note

– To ensure that the ABS and ASR systems work properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
– The systems can make noises when they intervene.
– If the indicator lamp or appears, there may be a malfunction ⇨ *page 14*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching on/off

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started.



Fig. 111 Centre console (top): ESC button

The ESC operates in several levels. Depending on which level is selected, the stabilising function of the ESC is restricted or switched off, and the vehicle is stabilised to a greater or lesser degree.

In the following special situations, it may be advisable to switch on the sport mode to allow a certain amount of wheelspin:

– Rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it
– Driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Characteristics	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is restricted ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilisation function is no longer available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and traction control system (ASR) are switched off.	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is fully available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press the OFF button for longer than 3 seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lamps	lights up.	and ESC OFF* light up.	goes out, or and ESC OFF* go out.
Driver messages	**Stabilisation control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilisation control (ESC): switched off. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilisation control (ESC): switched on**

WARNING

You should switch on the sport mode or switch off the ESC/traction control system (ASR) only if your driving ability and the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely - danger of skidding!

– The stabilising functionality is restricted when sport mode is switched on. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads.
– When the ESC/traction control system (ASR) is switched off, the vehicle will not be stabilised.

Note

– The ESC/traction control system (ASR) cannot be switched off and the sport mode cannot be switched on when the cruise control system* or adaptive cruise control* is on.
– In the event of a malfunction in the Audi magnetic ride, it may not be possible to switch off the ESC/ASR or switch on the sport mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to vehicles: with four-wheel drive

On quattro models the engine power is distributed to all four wheels.

General notes

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels. The distribution of power is controlled automatically according to your driving style and the road conditions. Also refer to ⇨ *page 102, Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities - both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tyres

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, your car will have plenty of *traction* in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, we still recommend that winter tyres or all-season tyres should be fitted *on all four wheels* when winter road conditions are expected, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.

Snow chains

On roads where snow chains are mandatory, this also applies to cars with four-wheel drive ⇨ *page 234, Snow chains*.

Replacing tyres

On vehicles with four-wheel drive, all four tyres must have the same rolling circumference. Also avoid using tyres with varying tread depths ⇨ *page 231, New wheels or tyres*.

Off-roader?

Your Audi does not have enough ground clearance to be used as an off-road vehicle. It is therefore best to avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain as much as possible.

WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast on icy or slippery roads just because the car still has good acceleration in these conditions – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Rear spoiler

Applies to vehicles: with automatic rear spoiler

The automatic rear spoiler increases the car's stability.



Fig. 112 Centre console: Button for rear spoiler

The rear spoiler can be extended or retracted manually or automatically.

Automatic mode (normal operation)

– Automatic extension: The rear spoiler is automatically extended at road speeds above approximately 120 km/h. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Automatic retraction: The rear spoiler is automatically retracted at road speeds below approximately 80 km/h.

Manual mode

– Manual extension: Briefly press the button ⇨ *Fig. 112* to extend the rear spoiler all the way out.
– Manual retraction: At road speeds up to about 20 km/h, press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. At road speeds between 20 km/h and 120 km/h, press the button briefly to retract the rear spoiler all the way back.

WARNING

– When extending or retracting the rear spoiler, please make sure that no persons or objects are close to the moving spoiler - risk of injury!
– If the indicator lamp appears, the rear spoiler may have failed to extend due to a malfunction. In this case, the car's handling may be different at high speeds. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay (but do not exceed 140 km/h) and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION

– If you need to push the vehicle, never put your weight on the rear spoiler - Risk of damage!
– To avoid damage to the rear spoiler, you should not lean on it or apply any other type of pressure.
– Do not operate the rear spoiler manually when the boot lid is open or any moving parts of the automatic rear spoiler are obstructed - risk of damage!

Note

Clean the rear spoiler housing every 2 to 3 months. The rear spoiler housing must be free of ice, snow and leaves in order to operate correctly.

Power management

This system helps to ensure reliable starting

The power management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus helps to ensure that there is always enough power available to start the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional electrical system is left parked for a long time, the battery will gradually lose its charge because certain electrical equipment (such as the immobiliser) continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. In some cases there may not be enough power available to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent power management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the battery.

The main functions incorporated in the power management system are **battery diagnosis**, **residual current management** and **dynamic power management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis function constantly registers the condition of the battery. Sensors detect the battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This enables the system to calculate the current power level and charge condition of the battery.

Residual current management

The residual current management reduces power consumption while the vehicle is parked. It controls the supply of power to the various electrical components while the ignition is switched off. The system takes the battery diagnosis data into consideration.

Depending on the power level of the battery, the individual electrical components are switched off one after the other to prevent the battery from losing too much charge and to ensure that the engine can be started reliably. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dynamic power management

While the vehicle is moving, this function distributes the available power to the various electrical components and systems according to their requirements. The power management ensures that on-board systems do not consume more electrical power than the alternator can supply, and thus maintains the maximum possible battery power level.

Note

– The power management system is not able to overcome the given physical limits. Please remember that the power and life of the battery are limited.
– If the indicator lamp ⇨ *page 13* appears, the starting ability may be impaired.

Points to remember

Starting ability has first priority.

Short trips, city traffic and low temperatures all place a heavy load on the battery. In these conditions a large amount of power is consumed, but only a small amount is supplied. The situation is also critical if electrical equipment is in use when the engine is not running. In this case power is consumed when none is being generated.

In these situations you will be aware that the power management system is intervening to control the distribution of electrical power.

When the vehicle is parked for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period. Certain convenience features, such as remote control unlocking, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

If you listen to the radio or use other electrical equipment when the engine is not running, this will discharge the battery.

A message will appear on the infotainment display before the battery power drops to a level where the starting ability is impaired.

This message warns you that the system you are using will soon be switched off automatically. You should therefore start the engine if you wish to continue using the system.

When the engine is running

Although the alternator generates electrical power, the battery can still become discharged while the vehicle is being driven. This can occur when a lot of power is being consumed but only a small amount supplied, especially if the battery is not fully charged initially.

To restore the necessary energy balance, the system will then temporarily shut off the electrical components that are using a lot of power, or reduce the current they are consuming. Heating systems in particular use a large amount of electrical power. If you notice, for instance, that the seat heating* or the rear window heater is not working, they may have been temporarily switched off or regulated to a lower heat output. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

You may also notice that the engine runs at a slightly faster idling speed. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern. The increased idling speed allows the alternator to meet the greater power requirement and charge the battery at the same time.

Information saved in the control units

The vehicle is fitted in the factory with electronic control units that, among other things, control the engine and the gearbox. The control units also monitor the exhaust system and the airbags.

The control units continually analyse data relevant to the vehicle while you are driving. In the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

event of faults or anomalies in the vehicle data, only these data are saved. As a rule, faults are shown by the warning lamps in the instrument cluster.

Data saved in the control units can only be read and analysed with special equipment.

A qualified workshop is only able to recognise and deal with faults by using the relevant saved data. Among other things, the saved data may contain the following information:

– Data relating to the engine and the gearbox
– Speed
– Direction of travel
– Braking force
– Seat belt warning system data

The control units installed will not under any circumstances record conversations in the vehicle.

On vehicles with an automatic SOS dial system via a mobile phone or another connected device, the current location of the vehicle can be transmitted. In accidents where the control units register that airbags have been triggered, a signal can automatically be sent by the system. This depends on the service provider. The signal can only be sent in areas with sufficient mobile phone coverage.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is **not** equipped with an event data recorder.

In an event data recorder, information about the vehicle is temporarily saved. In the event of an accident, you can therefore obtain detailed information about the course of events. On vehicles with an airbag system, accident-related data such as impact speed, seat belt status, seat positions and trigger times can be saved. The exact information saved depends on the manufacturer.

The installation of an event data recorder is subject to the agreement of the vehicle's owner. This process is governed by legislation in some countries.

Reprogramming control units

All data for controlling components are saved in the control units. Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any convenience features are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual will no longer be accurate for the features that have been changed. We recommend having the reprogramming confirmed by an Audi workshop in the “Workshop remarks” section of your Service Schedule.

Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with information about possible reprogramming options.

Event memory

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out the event memory located in the footwell on the driver's side of the vehicle. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

The diagnostic connection must not be used for other purposes. Incorrect use can cause malfunctions – risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi Media Interface

Introduction

The Multi Media Interface (MMI) combines different communication, navigation and entertainment systems in your Audi.*

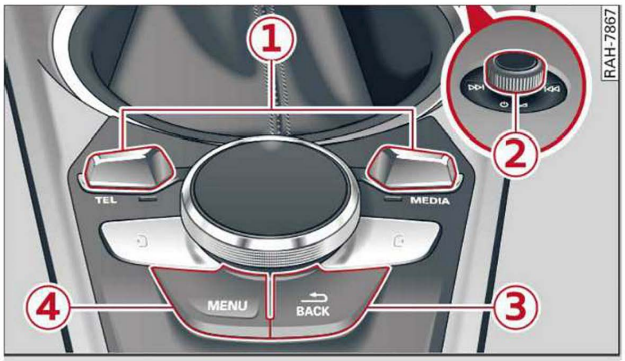


Fig. 113 Control console with ON/OFF button

You can operate your MMI system via the MMI control console ⇨ *Fig. 113*, the multi-function steering wheel or the speech dialogue system*.

Switching the MMI on/off

The MMI can be switched on/off manually.

– **To switch on manually**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button (2) ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113*. **Or**: Press the MENU button (4) or one of the buttons for calling up menus directly (1).

When the system is switched on, the last selected menu will be displayed, and the last selected audio source will be played.

– **To switch off manually**: Press and hold the ON/OFF button (2) until the MMI switches off. The MMI system will *not* be switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on if it was turned off manually the last time it was operated.

Note

If the engine is switched off and the battery charge level is low, the MMI system will be switched off automatically.

How to use the system

Calling up the menu

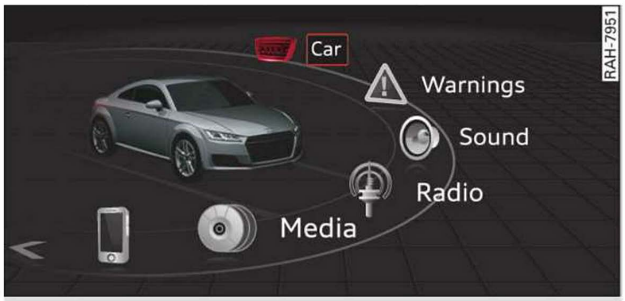


Fig. 114 Main menu

Calling up the main menu

▸ Press the MENU button (4) ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113*. The MMI menus (e.g. **Radio**) will be displayed ⇨ *Fig. 114*.

Calling up a menu directly

▸ Press the corresponding button (1) ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113* towards the menu you wish to open (e.g. RADIO).

Selecting and confirming a function

You can easily call up the various functions of the MMI system with its intuitive and standardised control layout.

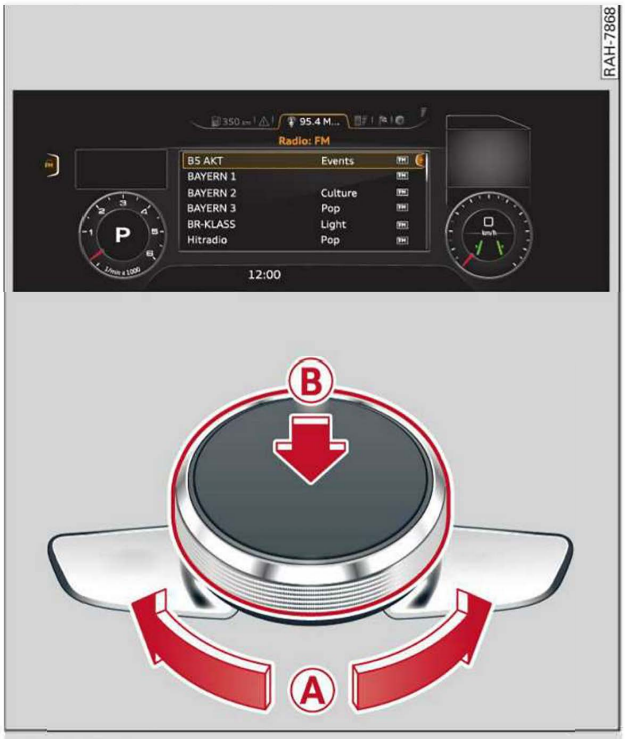


Fig. 115 How to use the controls

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting and confirming a function

- Ⓐ **To select a function**: Turn the rotary push-button to the desired function (e.g. setting a frequency).
- Ⓑ **To confirm the selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Returning to the previous function level

- Press the BACK button ③ ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113*.

Calling up/closing the selection menu

You can use the selection menu to call up further functions for individual menu items (e.g. Radio).



Fig. 116 Central area with symbol for selection menu



Fig. 117 Selection menu open

Important: The symbol for the selection menu must be shown on the left of the infotainment display ⇨ *Fig. 116*.

Calling up the selection menu

- Press the left control button Ⓒ ⇨ *Fig. 116*.

Closing the selection menu

- Press the right control button Ⓓ ⇨ *page 110, Fig. 118* to return to the previous function.

Calling up/closing the options menu

You can use the options menu to select and confirm specific functions for individual menu items (e.g. Radio) and to make changes to settings.

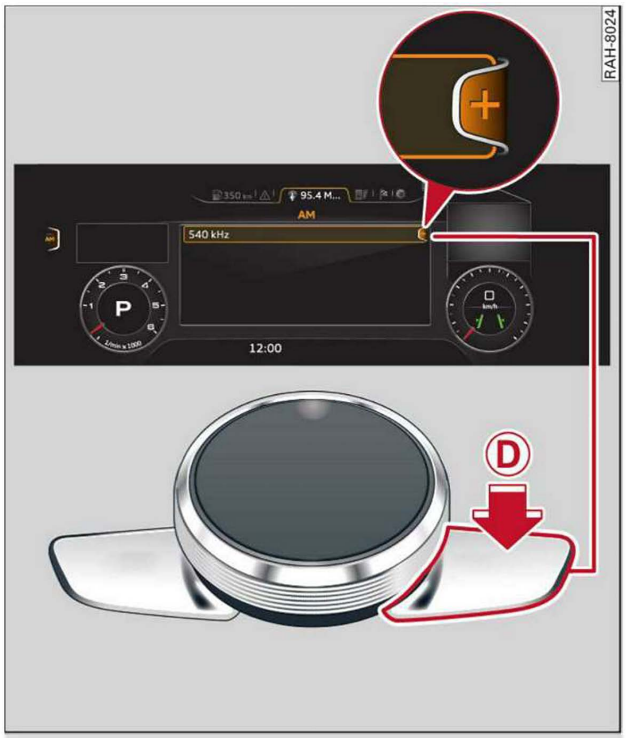


Fig. 118 Central area with symbol for options menu

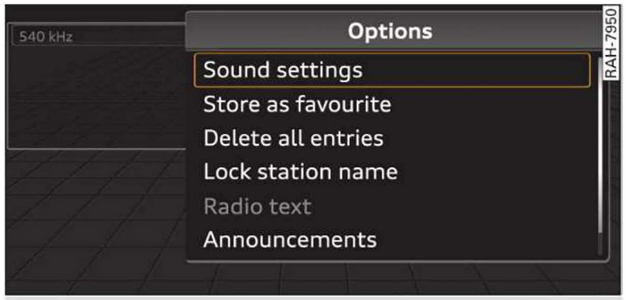


Fig. 119 Options menu open

Important: The symbol for the options menu ⊞ must be shown on the right of the infotainment display ⇨ *Fig. 118*.

Calling up the options menu

- Press the right control button Ⓓ ⇨ *Fig. 118*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Closing the options menu

▸ Press the left control button Ⓒ ⇨ *page 110, Fig. 116* to return to the previous function.

Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**

Using a path description:

▸ Press the RADIO button.
▸ Press the left control button.
▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to **FM** in the menu to preselect this function.
▸ Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm **FM**.

MMI touch

The MMI touch pad is located on the surface of the rotary pushbutton.



Fig. 120 Display when MMI touch is active

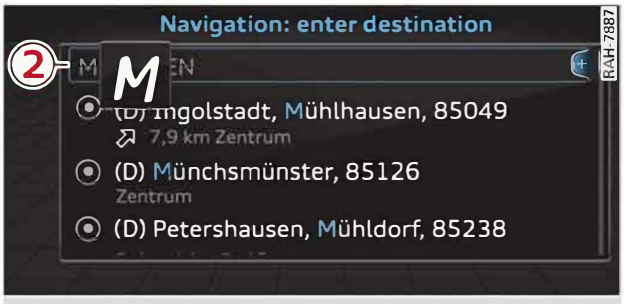


Fig. 121 Entering a navigation destination

When you can operate the system using the MMI touch pad, the infotainment display shows the symbol ① ⇨ *Fig. 120*.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols

Important: A function requiring text or number input must be active.

– Use your finger to write letters, numbers and symbols individually on the MMI touch pad. The MMI will display what you are entering ② ⇨ *Fig. 121* and add it to the entry field. It may confirm this verbally.
– **To enter a space**: Move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad.
– **To delete a character**: Move your finger from right to left across the MMI touch pad.
– **To use the suggestion**: Press the rotary push-button.
– **To switch directly to the selection list**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the right.
– **To enter Cyrillic characters**: Press the right control button. Select and confirm **Switch to Cyrillic characters**.

Moving the crosshairs/map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 156*.

– **To bring up/hide the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton to bring up the crosshairs. Press the BACK button ③ ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113* to hide the crosshairs.
– **To move the crosshairs on the standard map**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs are displayed.
– **To move the standard map**: Move two fingers in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs are displayed.
– **To move the Google Earth map**: Move the map in the desired direction using the MMI touch pad while the crosshairs are displayed.

Zooming in/out on map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨ *page 156*.

– **To zoom in**: Place two fingers on the MMI touch pad and move your fingers apart.
– **To zoom out**: Place two fingers on the MMI touch pad and move your fingers together. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjusting the sound focus

Important: The balance/fader option must be selected ⇨*page 190*.

– **To move the crosshairs of the sound focus**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Operating the DVD main menu

Important: A video DVD must be playing ⇨*page 179*.

– **To select a menu option**: Move your finger up/down or to the left/right on the MMI touch pad.
– **To confirm your selection**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Note

You can set the volume of the MMI touch spoken cues according to your own preferences ⇨*page 191*.

Rotary pushbutton with joystick function

The MMI control console includes a rotary pushbutton with an integrated joystick function. You can use this to move the crosshairs on a map or to adjust the sound focus.

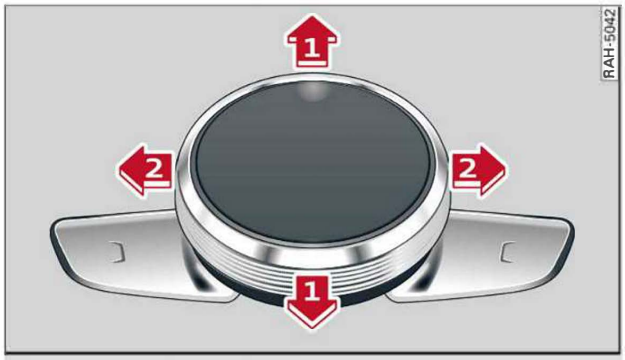


Fig. 122 Operating logic of rotary pushbutton with joystick function

Calling up/closing the selection menu

Push the rotary pushbutton to the left to call up the selection menu ⇨*page 110*.

Press the BACK button ③ ⇨*page 109, Fig. 113* to return to the previous function. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton to the right to close the selection menu.

Calling up/closing the options menu

Push the rotary pushbutton to the right to call up the options menu ⇨*page 110*.

Press the BACK button ③ ⇨*page 109, Fig. 113* to return to the previous function. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton to the left to close the options menu.

Displaying the entry field/switching to the speller

Push the rotary pushbutton upwards to access the entry field or the beginning of a list in the central area. If the entry field is already open, you can switch directly to entry via the speller by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards again ⇨*page 113*[1)].

On the map

Important: A map must be displayed ⇨*page 156*.

– **To display the entry field**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.
– **To display the route**: If route guidance is active, you can have the route displayed by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards ⇨*page 152, Fig. 145*.

Adjusting the sound focus[1)]

Important: The balance/fader option must be selected ⇨*page 190*.

– **To move the crosshairs for the sound focus**: Press the rotary pushbutton. The crosshairs will appear and can now be moved horizontally. To move the crosshairs vertically, press the rotary pushbutton again.

[1)] Only applies to vehicles with MMI Radio plus

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speller for letters/numbers

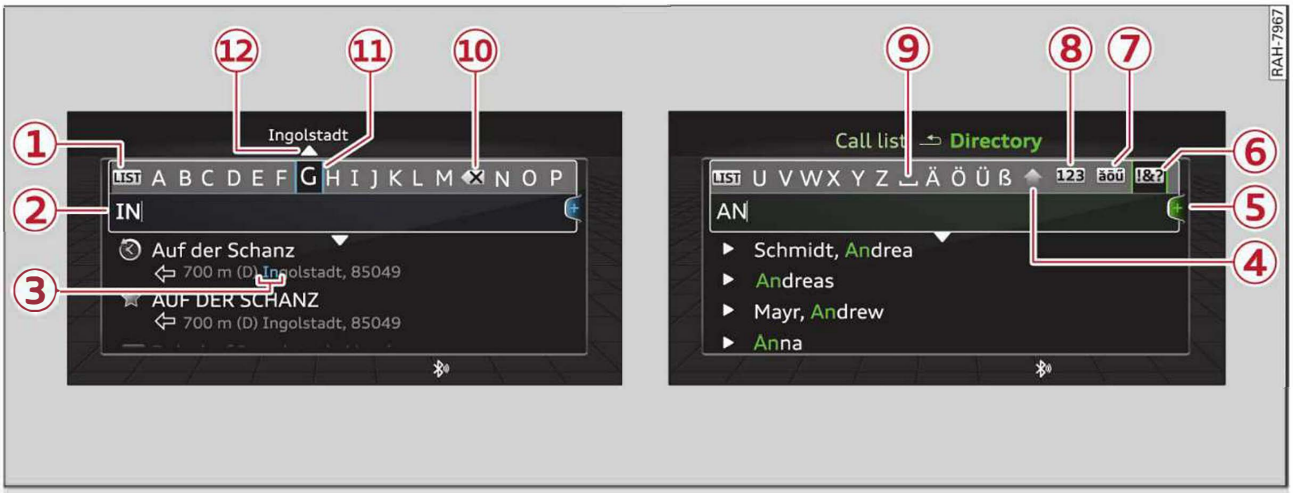


Fig. 123 Speller

– **To enter a character**: Turn the rotary pushbutton while in the character selection line (11) ⇨ *Fig. 123* to select the desired character. Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm the character. Your entry will appear in the entry field (2). When you have entered all characters, select and confirm LIST (1). **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards.

– **To delete a character**: Using the rotary pushbutton, turn the pointer to ⌫ (10) and press the rotary pushbutton. To delete all characters in the entry field, select ⌫ and press and hold the rotary pushbutton until all characters have been deleted.

– **To enter a special character**: Select and confirm !&? (6), äöü (7) or 123 (8).Use the speller for numbers to select and confirm the special character desired (such as a hyphen or full stop).

– **Input help**: In some cases (such as in the navigation system), the system will make suggestions to complete your entry while you are still making it (12). These can be accepted by pushing the rotary pushbutton upwards.

Overview of the symbols in the speller

The symbols of the speller for letters/numbers are explained in the following table:

	Symbol / marking	Explanation
(1)	LIST	To switch to the selection list.
(2)	Entry field	The current entry is displayed.
(3)	List of suggestions	A list of suggestions for the letters already entered is displayed.
(4)	⬆	To switch from lower case to upper case letters and vice versa.
(5)	⊂+	To open further speller options, e.g. **Close speller**, **Clear entry field** or **Switch to Cyrillic characters**
(6)	!&?	Punctuation and special characters
(7)	äöü	To show language-specific special characters or the Cyrillic alphabet.
(8)	123/ABC	To display numbers or to switch from entering letters to numbers and vice versa.
(9)	␣	To enter a space in the entry field.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Symbol / marking	Explanation
⑩	⌫	To delete the character to the left of the cursor.
⑪	Character selection	The character selected will be highlighted.
⑫	▲	The entry suggestion can be accepted by pushing the rotary push-button upwards.

Searching

You can use the search function to search for entries in the MMI (e.g. station names).



Fig. 124 Entry suggestion in the radio function

The search function is available in the **Vehicle**, **Radio**, **Media**, **Telephone**, **Navigation** and **Audi connect** menus.

Calling up the search function

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (e.g. Radio).
- You may need to push the rotary pushbutton upwards to call up the entry field Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 124*.

Searching for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in the entry field. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces.

The system may make suggestions Ⓒ depending on what you have entered. Further entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results Ⓑ.

If the desired term is not yet being displayed, continue entering letters until it appears.

You can enter search terms in any order using the search function. The first few letters of the search terms will often be sufficient to bring up a list of results. In the **Radio** menu, for example, write the name of a radio station and the initial letters of the programme type.

Accepting an entry suggestion

Important: An entry suggestion must be displayed.

- **When using MMI touch***: Press the rotary pushbutton.
- **When using the speller**: Push the rotary push-button upwards.

Using an entry from the results list

- **When using MMI touch***: Turn the rotary push-button to the right. Select an entry from the list and confirm it.
- **When using the speller**: Select and confirm LIST. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards. Select an entry from the list and confirm it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

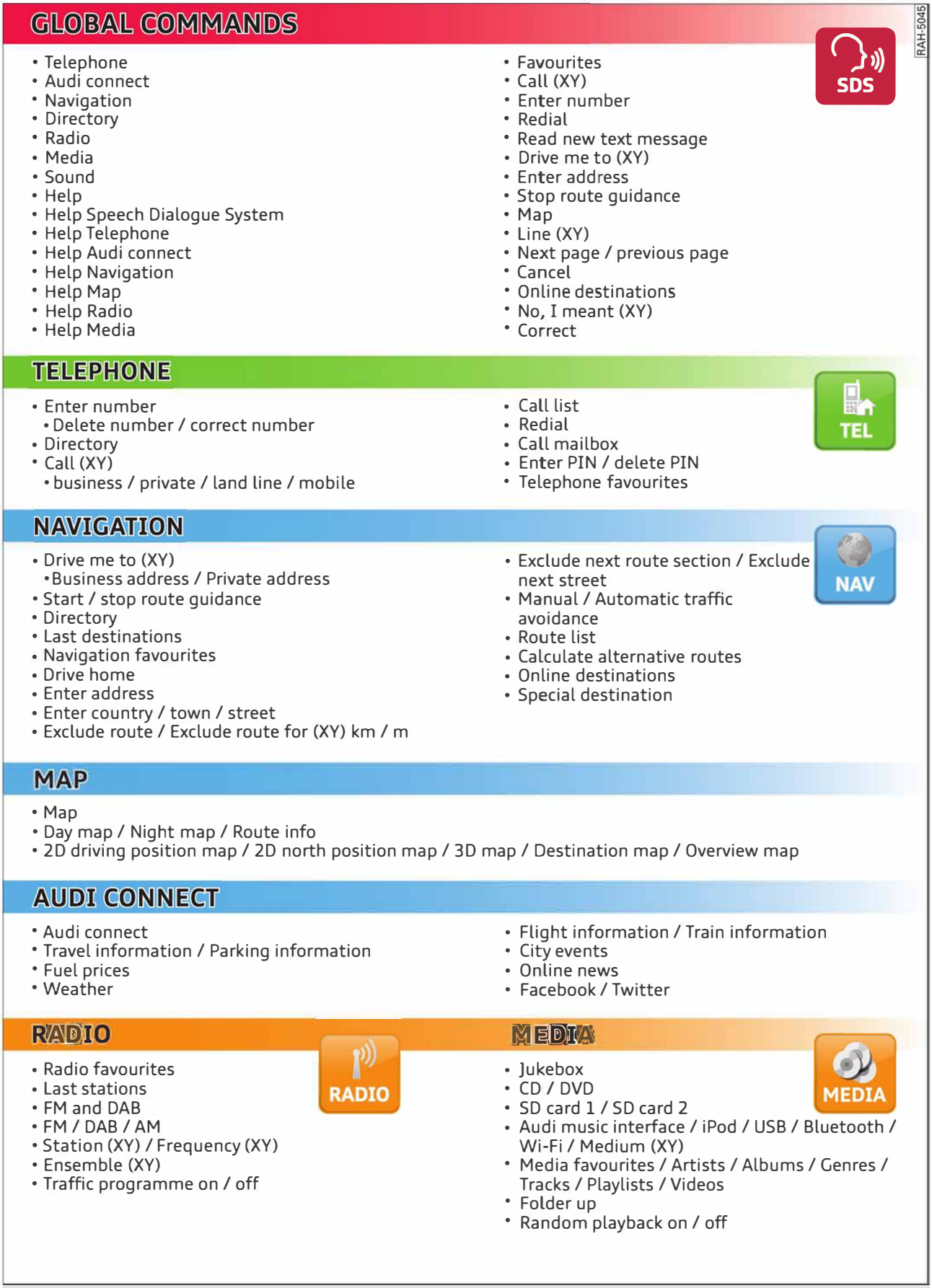


Fig. 125 Overview of commands

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speech dialogue system

How to use the system

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system

You can operate many infotainment functions conveniently by voice.



Fig. 126 Talk button and right thumbwheel on multi-function steering wheel

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on ⇨*page 109*, you must not be talking on the phone, and the parking aid must not be active.

- **To switch on**: Briefly press the button ⇨*Fig. 126* on the multi-function steering wheel* and give a spoken command after the **beep** signal.
- **To switch off**: Press and hold the button for several seconds. **Or**: Say the command **Cancel**.
- **To pause**: Say the command **Pause**. To end the pause, press the button.
- **To make a correction**: Press the button once. **Or**: Say the command **Correction**.

Input help

The system guides you through the input routine with cues and messages.

– **Input help messages on screen**: After the speech dialogue system is switched on, a selection of possible commands will be shown. The command display can be switched on/off via MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialogue system**.
– **Spoken input help cues**: To have the system play the commands currently possible, switch on the speech dialogue system and say **Help**.

How to help the system understand you

Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.

Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.

Avoid speaking when the speech dialogue system is saying a cue.

Close doors, windows and sun roof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.

Keep the air outlets of the air distribution system pointed away from the microphone, which is fitted in the vicinity of the front interior lights in the headliner.

The system should only be operated by the driver, since the handsfree microphone is directed towards the driver.

Other settings

If you would like to change other settings, e.g. for the **individual speech training** to adapt the system to your voice, the **command display** or the **volume of the navigation cues**, select MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialogue system**.

WARNING

– Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations - accident risk!
– The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

Note

– The dialogue is paused when an incoming telephone call is received; you can continue the dialogue by ignoring the call. If you answer the call, the dialogue will be cancelled. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– No navigation cues* or traffic announcements are given when a dialogue is running.
– You can select an entry from a list both via the speech dialogue system and using the rotary pushbutton.
– The speech dialogue system does not support commands in Arabic, Norwegian or Hungarian.

Notes on the command overviews

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system

The following overviews show you the commands that you can give to operate the MMI via the speech dialogue system.

Alternative commands are separated by the symbol "**/**"; for example you can say: **Telephone /**(or) **Navigation /**(or) **Radio**.

Commands that belong together and should be spoken as a sequence are marked with the symbol "**>**"; for example you can say: **Enter address** > (and subsequently) **Enter country**.

As a rule, only the main commands are displayed. However, the system may also recognise some synonyms. For example, for **business address** you can also say **work address**, **office address**, **the office** or **work**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system

You can give global commands any time, irrespective of the menu currently selected.

Function	Say:
Calling up the menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect** / **Car** / **Tone**
Having the system play the possible commands	**Help** / **Help Speech dialogue system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect**
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read new text message**
Navigation functions	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address** / **Stop route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations** / **Online destination (XY)**
Calling up the favourites	**Favourites** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correcting a command	**Correction**
Switching off the speech dialogue system	**Cancel**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Telephone

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system and telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 123*, and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 117*.

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, e.g. **Call John Smith**
Dialling a specific number stored for a contact	**Call (XY) business / private / land line / mobile**, e.g. **Call John Smith private**
Dialling a phone number when an address card is open	**Call / Call business number / Call private number / Call land line / Call business mobile**
Calling a contact from the favourites list	**Telephone favourites** > *desired contact when requested* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialled	**Redial**
Dialling a telephone number	**Enter number** > *enter phone number in blocks of individual digits when requested*, e.g. **07441 234 567** > **Dial**
Correcting an entered phone number	**Correction / Delete number**
Displaying contact information	**Directory** > *desired contact when requested*, e.g. **John Smith**
Listening to voice mail messages	**Call mailbox**
Entering the SIM PIN code	**Enter PIN** > *enter PIN in individual digits when requested* > **Store**
Correcting an entered PIN	**Correction / Delete PIN**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Note

– If you have a mobile phone that transmits first names and surnames separately, you can select directory contacts both by entering the full name (“first name, surname” or “surname, first name”) and by saying only the first name or surname.

– For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go to www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.

Audi connect

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system and Audi connect

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 137*.

Function	Say:
Calling up an Audi connect service	**Audi connect** > *follow the directions given by the system*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.

Messages

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system and Audi connect

Important: A SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the control console's SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 126*. **Or**: A mobile phone with active MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 123*.

Function	Say:
Having a new message read out	**Read new text message**
Having messages read out	**Read text message**

Note

For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go to www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.

Navigation

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system and navigation system

Important: The **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 117*.

You can say the following commands to enter a destination:

Function	Say:
Calling up a list of recent navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Calling up the favourites	**Navigation favourites**
Calling up your home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with assistance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the directions given by the system*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter town** / **Enter post code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making corrections while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, e.g. **Drive me to John Smith**
Navigating to a specific address stored for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, e.g. “Navigate to John Smith private”
Navigating to favourites	**Navigation favourites** > **Line (XY)** / *line content* > *start route guidance when requested*
Starting route guidance when an address card is open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover while route guidance is active	**Enter address** > *desired address when requested* > *confirm new destination/stopover when requested*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Function	Say:
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Cancelling the active route guidance	**Stop route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a special destination with search area with assistance from the system	**Special destination** > **Change search area** > *enter desired category or subcategory when requested*, e.g. “Restaurant”
Categories for entering special destinations	**Audi Service** / **Railway station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking space** / **Service area** / **Restaurant** / **Filling station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering special destinations	**In immediate vicinity** / **In vicinity of route** / **In vicinity of destination** / **In vicinity of stopover** / **In new town** / **In new country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, e.g. “**Online destination Palace Hotel**”
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

You can say the following commands to make additional navigation settings:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Change map colours automatically**
Map type	**2D driving position map** / **2D north position map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map** / **Traffic map** / **Google Earth map**
Displaying the route list	**Route list**
Displaying remaining distance/time while route guidance is active	**Destination info**
Highest speed query	**How fast can I go here?**
Setting the navigation cues during active route guidance	**Voice guidance on** / **Voice guidance off** / **Voice guidance compact** / **Voice guidance complete** / **Voice guidance traffic**
Dynamic traffic avoidance	**Manual traffic avoidance** / **Automatic traffic avoidance** / **Switch off traffic avoidance**
Excluding the next section of the route	**Exclude route**
Excluding a certain section of the route	**Exclude route for (XY) metres/kilometres/yards/miles** / **Exclude next street** / **Exclude next section of route**

Note

– Depending on the selected menu language and the country you are in, you may have to spell destinations to enter them for route guidance.

– Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system

Important: The **Radio** menu must already have been called up, regardless of the menu you are currently in.

Function	Say:
Selecting a waveband	**FM and DAB* / DAB* / FM / AM**
Tuning to a station from the station list	**Station (XY) / Ensemble (XY)**[a] **/ Last stations**
Selecting a station from the favourites	**Radio favourites > Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Receiving traffic news stations and switching traffic announcements on/off	**Traffic announcements on / Traffic announcements off**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

[a] Applies to the DAB* waveband

Media

Applies to vehicles: with speech dialogue system

Important: A medium must already have been called up, regardless of the menu you are currently in.

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox* / CD / DVD / SD card 1 / SD card 2 / Audi music interface* / iPod* / USB* / Bluetooth* / Wi-Fi* / Medium (XY)**, e.g. “Rachel's player”
Selecting audio/video* files from the jukebox*	**Media favourites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos**
Selecting audio/video* files from an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos / Composers / Podcasts / Audiobooks**
Navigating in a structure of folders/ list	**Folder up / Line (XY)**
Selecting random playback	**Switch on random playback / Switch off random playback**
Correcting an entry	**No, I meant (XY)**
Closing the full list of commands	**Close**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Natural commands

The following overview shows a selection of commands that enable you to communicate more naturally with your vehicle.



Fig. 127 Natural commands

Note

The natural commands are not available for all languages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the number of functions available, you have different options for making calls via the MMI:

Option 1

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth. See ⇨*page 123*.

Option 2

Using a separate SIM card in the SIM card reader*. See ⇨*page 126*.

WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm should be kept between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- The speech dialogue system ⇨*page 116* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off your engine.
- Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please see ⇨*page 192*.

CAUTION

- Always obey the laws regulating the use of telephones in vehicles.
- You must switch off the telephone in areas where the use of mobile telephones is prohibited. Please observe all relevant caution notices and regulations.
- The car telephone kit may be installed, serviced and repaired only by an Audi workshop or other qualified workshop.

Note

The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle. The connection can be susceptible to interference from other electronic devices.

Connecting a telephone

Bluetooth profiles

Applies to vehicles: with telephone



Fig. 128 This QR code takes you directly to the mobile device database (data connection costs vary according to your mobile phone contract).

For information on which Bluetooth connections and functions are supported by your mobile phone, please contact your mobile network service provider or consult the mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Car telephone kit*

This connection uses the vehicle's integrated car telephone kit and external aerial to achieve the best possible speech and reception quality when making calls. Your mobile phone may then operate in power saving mode. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your mobile phone must support the remote SIM Access Profile (rSAP) and be connected to the MMI using the **Car phone** mode in order to use the online functions of Audi connect*. Alternatively, you can use a separate SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 126*. A data plan[1)] is necessary in both cases.

You can use the online functions of Audi connect ⇨ *page 137* if your mobile phone contract includes a data option[1)].

Handsfree

With this type of connection, you can use the handsfree system to operate the telephone functions via the MMI. Your phone calls will be made via the antenna of your mobile phone.

With the Audi phone box*, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. You can also charge your phone with a USB adapter.

Connecting a mobile phone using Bluetooth

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

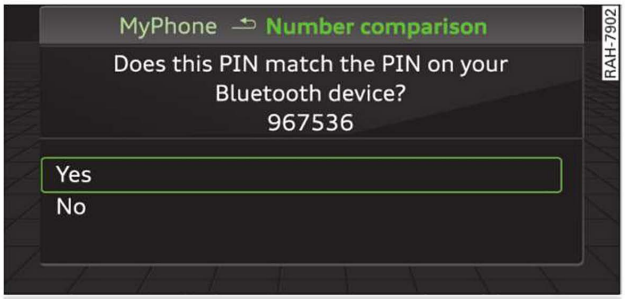


Fig. 129 PIN display for entry on mobile phone

Requirements

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 188* and the mobile phone must be activated.

The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone.

Access to your SIM card (*SIM Access*) must be activated on your mobile phone.[2)]

Connecting a mobile phone

- Select: TEL button > **Connect mobile phone** > **Continue**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown on the infotainment display. **Or**: Search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- Select and confirm the desired mobile phone from the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- The MMI will generate a PIN for the connection ⇨ *Fig. 129*.
- Select and confirm **Yes**.
- Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your mobile phone, confirm it on the phone and in the MMI. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN code.

You may need to enter the PIN for your SIM card in the MMI[2)].

Please note any additional system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory and allow access to your text messages separately.

After connecting successfully

After the connection has been established successfully, you will be shown a short message containing information on the profiles used to establish the connection. You can make changes to the profiles via MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 188*. This can also be done retrospectively. ▶

1) Connection costs depend on your mobile phone contract. We strongly recommend an unlimited data plan.

2) Not available in all markets and applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the directory of the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

After you have connected your mobile phone to the MMI successfully, you can immediately begin configuring Audi connect ⇨ *page 137*.

Note

– You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones using the connection manager ⇨ *page 187*.
– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when they are within range and the ignition is on.
– You will need to authorise the MMI connection on your mobile phone to enable automatic connection.
– Please note any system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory and allow access to your text messages separately.
– You receive the SIM PIN code from your mobile network service provider together with the SIM card. If you enter the SIM PIN code incorrectly three times[1)] in a row, the SIM card will be be blocked. A PUK (personal unblocking key) must be entered in order to reactivate the SIM card.
– You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only one connection is active at a time.
– Any Bluetooth device that is already connected to the MMI system is disconnected when another device is connected to the system.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car.
– For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone. For information on using a phone in your car, please go online (e.g. www.audi.com/bluetooth) or ask an Audi dealer.

1) The number of possible attempts depends on the SIM card.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to vehicles: with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. You can also charge your phone with a USB adapter. The use of the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.*

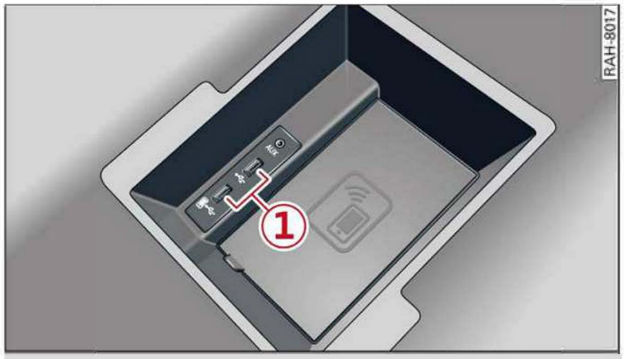


Fig. 130 Using the Audi phone box

The Audi phone box is located in the centre console's storage compartment ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 123*.

– **To establish a connection with the external car aerial**: Place your mobile phone onto the middle of the telephone symbol in the Audi phone box with the phone's display facing upwards. When doing so, make sure that there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
– **To charge a mobile phone with a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile phone to the USB socket (1) ⇨ *Fig. 130* using a USB charging cable.

For ease of use, Audi offers special USB adapters* ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 161*. The following USB adapters are currently available: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ⓐ USB adapter for mobile phones with micro USB connector*

Ⓑ USB adapter for mobile phones with Apple Lightning connector*

Ⓒ USB adapter for mobile phones with Apple dock connector*

WARNING

Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres. This could result in serious injuries and also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. Always keep the centre armrest closed when driving.

Note

- The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.
- If the mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box in a bag or a protective case, this may interfere with the connection to the external aerial.
- An enhanced transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile phone is placed inside.
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.
- USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
- To avoid malfunctions, ensure that the mobile phone is correctly placed inside the Audi phone box.

Using the SIM card reader

Applies to vehicles: with SIM card reader

You can choose how you wish to make telephone calls when you insert a separate SIM card in the SIM card reader:

Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card)*

The SIM card in the SIM card reader is used both for telephone calls and Audi connect services ⇨ *page 137*.

Your telephone conversations are directed via the external vehicle aerial to optimise sound and reception quality. For the telephone options, you can be reached on the telephone number of the SIM card in the SIM card reader. Depending on the SIM card type, this may be the same number as for your the current mobile phone contract (twin/Multi SIM card) or another number from a different mobile phone contract.

Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth)

Calls are made with the mobile phone connected using the **Handsfree** function. You can therefore be reached on the phone number of the SIM card in your mobile phone. In this case, the SIM card in the SIM card reader is used for Audi connect services only.

Using a separate SIM card

Applies to vehicles: with SIM card reader



Fig. 131 Inserting the SIM card (mini SIM card, actual size)

Requirements

The vehicle must be stationary, the ignition must be switched on and the **Telephone** menu must have been called up. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using a separate SIM card

- ▸ Insert your mini SIM card (printed side facing up, contact surface facing down) into the slot of the card reader ⇨ *Fig. 131*. The missing corner of the SIM card should be at the front left. Then push the SIM card into the slot until you feel it engage.
- ▸ If requested, enter the PIN code for your SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To allow the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Select and confirm either **Telephone installed in vehicle (SIM card)** or **Personal mobile phone (Bluetooth)** ⇨ *page 126*.
- ▸ Confirm the message shown by selecting **Accept this time**, **Always accept** or **Decline**, depending on whether or not you wish to allow a data connection for Audi connect services to be established.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, one or two signal strength bars (depending on the connection type) will be displayed in the status line of the infotainment display.

You can specify whether you wish to make calls using the SIM card in the SIM card reader or your mobile phone via MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 188*. This can also be done retrospectively.

In addition, the contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the directory of the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Removing a SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the SIM card. The card will then eject from the slot. Remove the SIM card.

Note

If your mobile phone does not support the SIM Access Profile (e.g. iPhone), you can also use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory/contacts** profile ⇨ *page 188*.

Using the telephone

Calling up the telephone

Applies to vehicles: with telephone



Fig. 132 Telephone functions in the selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 123*, or a SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 126*.

- ▸ Select: TEL button > left control button.

The following telephone functions are available ⇨ *Fig. 132*:

1. Call list ⇨ *page 128*
2. Favourites ⇨ *page 129*
3. Directory ⇨ *page 131*
4. Enter number ⇨ *page 128*
5. Text message (SIM card)*/Text message (mobile phone)* ⇨ *page 130*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dialling a telephone number



Fig. 133 Dialling a telephone number from the call list

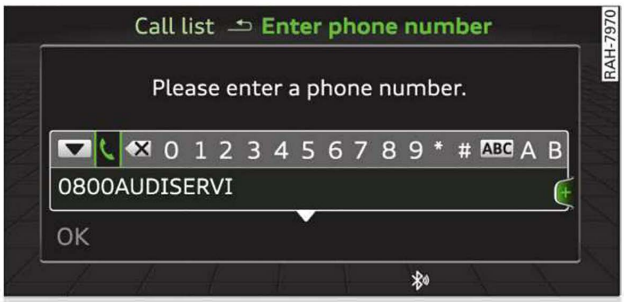


Fig. 134 Speller for numbers

Select: TEL button > left control button.

Call list

Important: A telephone number must be stored in the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number in the call list.

Symbols in the call list ⇨ *Fig. 133*:

① Missed calls
② Numbers dialled
③ Received calls

Favourites

Important: A telephone number or a contact must have been added as a favourite ⇨ *page 129*.

Select and confirm a favourite in the favourites list.

Directory

You can dial a telephone number directly from the directory ⇨ *page 131*.

Enter number

– **To enter a telephone number using numbers**: Enter a telephone number using the speller for numbers ⇨ *Fig. 134*.
– **To enter a telephone number using letters**: Select ABC using the speller for numbers. Enter a series of letters, e.g. *AUDISERVICE* using the speller for letters.
– **To dial a telephone number**: Select and confirm ✆. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton downwards. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **To delete letters/numbers individually**: Select and confirm ⌫.
– **To delete all the numbers/letters you have entered at once**: Turn the speller to ⌫ and press and hold the rotary pushbutton. **Or**: Press the right control button and select and confirm **Clear entry field**.

You can enter **DTMF** tones ("touch-tones") using the speller while you are talking on the phone.

Answering and ending telephone calls

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

– **To answer an incoming call**: Select and confirm **Answer**.
– **To decline an incoming call**: Select and confirm **Decline**.
– **To mute an incoming call**: Select and confirm **Mute**.
– **To end a call/cancel the dialling process**: Press the rotary pushbutton (**End call**).

To answer a further call: If you are already talking on the phone when someone else calls, select **Answer** to place the current call on hold and to answer the incoming call. If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

Caller information: Depending on whether the caller is stored in the directory and whether the telephone number is transmitted with the call, the caller's *name*, his/her *telephone number* or **Unknown** will appear on the infotainment display. A photo of the caller may also be shown if one has been assigned to the contact in your mobile phone and transmitted to the MMI. You can ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

find out if your mobile phone supports this function by asking your mobile network provider, consulting the operating manual of your mobile phone or visiting www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Note

Radio/media playback is muted when you make or receive phone calls.

During a telephone call

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

Important: A call must be in progress.

▸ Press the right control button.

The following options may be available during a call depending on the mobile phone being used and the type of connection:

– **To make a further call**: Select **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > *entry in list*.
– **To answer a further call when you are talking on the phone and have another call on hold**: Select **Replace**. The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Other functions are:

Switch microphone off: If you select and confirm this option, the caller will no longer be able to hear you; you will still be able to hear the caller.

Hold/Resume: You can put a call on hold and retrieve it later from the hold queue. Select and confirm a call to resume it.

Transfer to mobile/Retrieve call*: By selecting **Transfer to mobile**, you can transfer your current call from the MMI to your mobile phone. Selecting **Retrieve call** transfers the call from your mobile phone back to the MMI.

Switch: You can switch between two phone calls (one of them will be on hold at any given time). Select **End call** to end whichever call is active. The call on hold will remain in the hold queue and can be continued by pressing the right control button > **Resume**.

Merge to conference: Up to five callers and one caller on hold can be added to a conference (depending on the network service). To set up a further call, place all the members of an existing conference on hold by pressing the right control button > **Hold**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > *entry in list*. You can add the contact you have called to the conference using the right control button > **Merge to conference**. Select **Resume** to retrieve all participants in an existing conference from the hold queue.

Connection manager: ⇨ *page 187, Connection manager*.

Telephone settings: ⇨ *page 134, Telephone settings*.

Note

– If you are using the handsfree profile (**Handsfree**), the option *Call waiting* must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.
– For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
– The display for the incoming call may remain visible for several seconds afterwards; this depends on the type of mobile phone you are using. Should you use the function **Replace** or **Ignore**, it is possible that the current call will be ended.

Favourites

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

In addition to the mailbox number, you can store up to 50 contacts in the list of favourites, in any order.

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button.

To store an existing telephone number as a favourite: Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**. Select and confirm a contact in the list and choose a telephone number. Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**. Enter a name for the favourite or accept the suggestion. Select and confirm **Store**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To rename a stored favourite: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the list*. Select: right control button > **Rename favourite**.

To move a stored favourite: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the list*. Select: right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the position of the favourite selected.

To delete a stored favourite: Select and confirm **Favourites** > *select a favourite from the list*. Select: right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite/Delete all favourites**.

Messages

Text messages

Depending on your mobile phone and your mobile phone contract, you may be able to send and receive text messages (SMS) via the MMI.

Important

A SIM card with a messaging option must be inserted in the control console's SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 126*.

Alternatively, a mobile phone with active Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 123*.

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)/Text message (mobile phone)**.

Inbox

All the text messages you have received are displayed.

Sent text messages

All the text messages you have sent are displayed.

Outbox

All the text messages to be sent are displayed.

Note

– Please note that, depending on your SIM card (e.g. if you are using a Multi SIM card), you may need to activate the function for sending and receiving text messages. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone.
– For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go to www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.

Writing a text message

Applies to vehicles: with mobile phone with remote SIM Access Profile/Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)/Text message (mobile phone)** > right control button.

Write new text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter one or more recipients. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to vehicles: with mobile phone with remote SIM Access Profile/Bluetooth Message Access Profile

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Text message (SIM card)/Text message (mobile phone)** > **Inbox/Sent text messages/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on which menu you have selected.

Write new text message

Refer to ⇨ *page 130, Writing a text message*.

Reply*

You can reply to a text message you select in the **Inbox**.

Forward

You can forward a text message you have selected to another recipient.

Resend*

You can re-send a text message you have selected. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delete this text message*

You can delete a text message you have selected.

Text message settings*

The number of the text message centre of your mobile network service provider is displayed. If no number has been stored, you can enter the number of the text message centre. For more information, contact your service provider.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 187, Connection manager*.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 143, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Telephone settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 134, Telephone settings*.

Note

Messages deleted using the MMI are also automatically deleted on the mobile phone.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favourites** > **Mailbox**.

– **To enter the mailbox number**: Enter the number desired. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **To dial the mailbox number**: Select and confirm **Mailbox**.

Note

– This service must be set up and activated on your mobile network before you can use it. For more information, contact your service provider.
– The mailbox number depends on your service provider.

Emergency call functions

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Enter number** > *enter emergency number (e.g. 112)* > **OK**.

WARNING

– Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when a vital communication (e.g. medical emergency) is involved.
– Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

Note

Emergency numbers are not the same for all countries. Please make sure that you know the emergency number for the country you are in.

Directory

Calling up the directory

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

After a mobile phone has been connected successfully, the contacts from the mobile phone are automatically imported into the directory of the MMI system.

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Directory**.

– **To select a contact**: Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will appear. Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.
– **To search for a contact**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. Enter the initials of the contact you are looking for individually, separating them with a space. If necessary, enter further letters to narrow the search. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The contacts are displayed in alphabetical order; they can be sorted by first name/surname ⇨ *page 135*.

You can connect up to four different mobile phones to the MMI system, or use four different SIM cards with the SIM card reader*, allowing you to manage up to four private directories.

You can open the directory via the **Telephone*** menu and via the **Navigation*** menu.

Note

– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 114*.
– Please pay attention to any synchronisation queries on your mobile phone. You must confirm any synchronisation queries from the directory before the contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into the MMI directory.
– Which contacts are displayed on the MMI depends on the mobile phone you are using. For more information on which mobile phones are supported, please go to www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.
– In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
– If the SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 126*, the SIM card entries and the contacts in the local MMI memory (public) are displayed.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory (public) are visible anytime and are therefore not protected against access by other users.

Using contacts from another mobile phone

Applies to vehicles: with SIM card reader

If a SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader and is used for telephone calls, you can access the phone book on another mobile phone.

Important: A SIM card must be inserted in the SIM card reader.

▸ Refer to ⇨ *page 188, Directory*.

Note

– When the MMI system has downloaded the phone book from the mobile phone, the contacts from the SIM card will no longer be shown in the MMI directory.
– When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will load the phone book of the mobile phone if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system. If this is not the case, the MMI system will show the contacts from the SIM card in the SIM card reader.

Searching for a contact

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ Enter the initials of the contact you are looking for individually, separating them with a space. If necessary, enter further letters to narrow the search.
▸ Select and confirm a contact in the directory. The telephone numbers for the contact you have selected will appear.
▸ Select and confirm a phone number to start the call.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 114*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using a contact

Applies to vehicles: with telephone



Fig. 135 Directory

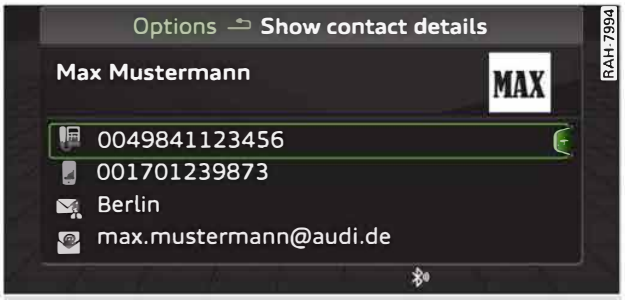


Fig. 136 Show contact details

- Select: TEL button > left control button. Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
- Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Call**: Select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Navigate to**: Select and confirm the desired address. To start navigating, select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Further options can be called up using the right control button:

Add navigation destination

Select and confirm the desired destination. To start navigating, select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Read contact

The MMI system automatically creates a name tag for each contact in the directory, which you can have the system read to you.

Store as favourite

Refer to ⇨ *page 129, Favourites.*

Send text message*

You can send the selected contact a text message ⇨ *page 130*.

Send as a text message

You can send the chosen contact as a text message in the vCard format (.vcf) ⇨ *page 130*.

Delete contact

You can delete a contact you have selected. Any contacts you delete on the MMI will also be deleted from your mobile phone.

Importing/exporting contacts

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the directory.

Important: An SD card must be inserted in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 169*, a USB mass storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 174*, or the requirements for Audi connect must be fulfilled ⇨ *page 137*.

- Select: TEL button > left control button > **Directory**.
- Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

– **To import contacts from a storage device**: Select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **To export contacts to a storage device**: Select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **To select all contacts at once for import/export**: Select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **To import contacts from your myAudi account**[1]: Select and confirm **Import contacts** > **myAudi account**. Enter your myAudi user data.

You must have a **myAudi account** before you can import contacts from the myAudi account. You only have to enter your myAudi user data/myAudi PIN once. When you store a vehicle in your myAudi account, you will receive the myAudi PIN in the account.

Note

– Please also observe the notes on **Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.
– For more information on the myAudi account, please see www.audi.com/myaudi.
– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory you are using.
– You can import up to 1000 contacts. You can call up the memory capacity of the directory any time ⇨ *page 135*.
– Never store important data on SD cards or USB mass storage devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of data or media.
– It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.

Other settings

Telephone settings

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

▸ Select: TEL button > right control button **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Call forward: Forwarding incoming calls to your mailbox or to another phone number can be activated/deactivated. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Call waiting: The warning (beep) that there is an incoming call during a telephone conversation can be activated/deactivated. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Transmit caller ID: Sending your telephone number in outgoing calls can be activated/deactivated. With the **Network-dependent** option, the setting agreed in your mobile network service contract will be used. The settings apply only to the **Telephone** menu in the MMI system. When the Bluetooth connection has been terminated, the settings of your mobile phone apply. You can use **Check status** to check whether this function is activated or deactivated.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 188, Bluetooth settings* onwards.

Data connection settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 144, Configuring the data connection*.

Telephone mode*

On vehicles with a car telephone kit, you can choose between three different telephone modes to optimise the network response. In **Automatic** mode, the car telephone automatically switches between the UMTS network (3G) and the GSM network (2G) depending on network availability and reception and on the position of the vehicle. There may be restrictions when using Google Earth or Wi-Fi. With **Telephony optimised**, the car telephone kit registers with the GSM network (2G). In this mode, the reception is prioritised for making and receiving calls. There may be restrictions when using Google Earth or Wi-Fi. When you select the telephone mode **Automatic** or **Telephony optimised**, there may be network restrictions when you try to use Audi connect services and make voice calls at the same time. With **Data service optimised**, the car telephone registers ▶

[1] The conditions for using Audi connect services must be met and you must have created an account at www.audi.com/myaudi, added a vehicle to the account and stored contacts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with the UMTS (3G) or GSM (2G) network depending on network availability and reception and on the position of the vehicle. In this mode, the reception is prioritised for the use of data services. There may be restrictions when making and receiving calls. We recommend that you mainly use this setting in areas with good UMTS (3G) network coverage.

Ring tone and volume settings[1)]

You can switch the MMI ring tone on or off using the **Mute telephone** function. Ring tones are played when you select the function **Ring tone**. Press the rotary pushbutton to store the selected ring tone. You can adjust the **Microphone input level** during an active phone call using the rotary pushbutton. For the settings **Ring tone volume/ Message volume**, see ⇨ *page 190*.

Network settings*

See ⇨ *page 188,* **Network settings*** onwards

Serial number (IMEI)*

The serial number of the telephone module installed in the MMI system is displayed.

Switch on telephone/Switch off telephone

The car telephone will be turned “on” automatically when the ignition is switched on, as long as it was *not* switched off separately the last time it was used.

Note

– You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only one connection is active at a time.
– All bonded Bluetooth devices can be deleted by resetting the **Bluetooth** function to the factory settings ⇨ *page 187*.

Directory settings

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **Directory**.

▸ Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

Memory capacity

The **Memory capacity** of the directory will be displayed.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the directory. Up to 4,000 contacts can be loaded from your mobile phone into each directory, and up to 1,000 contacts can be imported from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to their **surname** or **first name**.

Import contacts

Refer to ⇨ *page 133, Importing/exporting contacts*.

Export contacts

Refer to ⇨ *page 133, Importing/exporting contacts*.

Download phone book

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Greying out contacts without a number

If no number has been stored for a contact, the contact is displayed greyed out in the directory. You can activate this option if you wish to hide these contacts.

1) Depends on the connected mobile phone

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Troubleshooting

Applies to vehicles: with telephone

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check that Bluetooth discoverability is switched on in the MMI and on your mobile phone. On some mobile phones, discoverability is deactivated automatically after a short time. **Or:** Restart your mobile phone. Please refer to your mobile phone's operating manual for further information.
The mobile phone does not support the **remote SIM Access Profile** (e.g. iPhone).	You can insert the SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 126* and use the functions of the car telephone kit independently of your mobile phone. **Or**: Use an additional SIM card in the SIM card reader. When the SIM card is inserted, you can also use the contacts from your mobile phone by connecting the mobile phone to the system via the **Directory** profile ⇨ *page 188*.
Using the MMI with **two SIM cards** (in the SIM card reader *and* in a mobile phone).	The MMI only ever accesses *one* SIM card at a time. A SIM card inserted in the SIM card reader has priority over one in a mobile phone. However, you can still access the contacts on another mobile phone via Bluetooth if a SIM card is inserted ⇨ *page 188*.
After the mobile phone was connected **not all/none of the contacts** were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used. For further information, please contact your mobile network service provider, see the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or consult the Audi mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible with the system or the Bluetooth function of your mobile phone may have been deactivated. For more information, contact your system administrator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi connect

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Audi connect services allow online information to be directly transmitted and integrated into the vehicle.

Thanks to a Wi-Fi hotspot, it is possible to use a mobile device to access the Internet in the rear of the vehicle during journeys or anywhere in the vehicle when it is stationary.

WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please always observe ⇨ *page 192, Notes on traffic safety*.
- The Audi connect services should only be used via a Wi-Fi hotspot when the vehicle is stationary or from the rear seats if the vehicle is in motion – risk of accident!

Note

Please observe the **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145* before using the system.

Setting up

Before you start

An Internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect services. You can establish a connection by using one of the following options:

Option 1 [1)]

Connecting an rSAP[2)] enabled mobile phone via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 137*

Option 2

Using a separate SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 138*

Option 3 [1)]

Using a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone) as a personal Wi-Fi hotspot for the MMI ⇨ *page 139*

Connecting an rSAP enabled mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect



Fig. 137 Is your mobile phone rSAP enabled? This QR code takes you directly to the mobile device database (data connection costs vary according to your mobile phone contract).

Requirements

Your mobile phone must support the Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile (Bluetooth rSAP).

For information regarding which Bluetooth connections and functions your mobile phone supports, contact your mobile network service provider or consult the mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth ⇨ *Fig. 137*.

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 143* and the mobile phone must be activated.

The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile phone.

Access to your SIM card (*SIM Access*) must be activated on your mobile phone. ▶

1) Not available for all countries and models

2) Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connecting a mobile phone

- ▸ Select: TEL button > **Connect mobile phone** > **Continue**. The display will show the Bluetooth devices available. **Or**: Search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired mobile phone from the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▸ Enter the PIN to establish a connection on your mobile phone. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your mobile phone, confirm it on the phone and in the MMI. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN code.
- ▸ Then enter the PIN code for your SIM card in the MMI.

Please note any additional system queries on your mobile phone, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may also need to download the directory separately.

After connecting successfully

The signal strength bars and the Bluetooth symbol will appear in the status line of the infotainment display after the device has been connected successfully.

You can now use Audi connect.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ Confirm the system query of whether an Internet connection should be established with **Always accept**.

Note

– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, any devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system are connected automatically when they are within range and the ignition is on. You can bond several mobile phones to the MMI system; however only one connection is active at a time.

– You receive the SIM PIN code from your mobile network service provider together with the SIM card. If you enter the SIM PIN code incorrectly three times[1)] in a row, the SIM card will be be blocked. A PUK (personal unblocking key) must be entered in order to reactivate the SIM card.

– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car.

– For further information regarding your mobile phone, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your mobile phone. For information on using a phone in your car, please go online (e.g. www.audi.com/bluetooth) or ask an Audi dealer.

Using a separate SIM card

Applies to vehicles: with SIM card reader



Fig. 138 Inserting the SIM card (mini SIM card, actual size)

Requirements

The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. ▶

[1)] The number of possible attempts depends on the SIM card.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inserting SIM card

- ▸ Press the TEL button.
- ▸ Insert your mini SIM card (printed side facing up, contact surface facing down) into the slot of the card reader ⇨ *Fig. 138*. The missing corner of the SIM card should be at the front left. Then push the SIM card into the slot until you feel it engage.
- ▸ Enter the PIN code for your SIM card in the MMI.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To allow the MMI to connect automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ To establish an Internet connection for Audi connect services, confirm the prompt on the display with **Accept**.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, one or two signal strength bars (depending on the connection type) will be displayed in the status line of the infotainment display.

You can now use Audi connect.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ Confirm the system query of whether an Internet connection should be established with **Always accept**.

Removing SIM card

- ▸ Briefly press the SIM card. The card will then eject from the slot. Remove the SIM card.

Using a personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Requirements

Your mobile device and mobile network provider must support the mobile Wi-Fi hotspot function.

The personal Wi-Fi hotspot on your mobile device is activated.

Other devices must be permitted to access the mobile hotspot.

The Wi-Fi mode **hotspot and client** must have been selected in the MMI ⇨ *page 143*.

Connecting the MMI to a personal hotspot

- ▸ Select: TEL button > right control button > **Connection manager**.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi mode**.
- ▸ Select and confirm **hotspot and client**.
- ▸ Then select and confirm **Network search**. The devices found will be shown on the infotainment display.
- ▸ Select and confirm your personal Wi-Fi hotspot from the list.
- ▸ You may need to enter the password specified by your mobile device.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.

Note

– Please contact your mobile network service provider to find out which functions your mobile device supports.
– Whether other devices can use the mobile Wi-Fi hotspot depends on your data plan.
– Audi recommends that you set a password to protect mobile wireless networks from unauthorised access.

Configuring using myAudi

Activating/configuring certain Audi connect services

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Before you first use certain Audi connect services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account:

– If you do not yet have a personal myAudi account, please register on the Internet at www.audi.com/myaudi.
– Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
– Activate/configure the Audi connect services you require for your vehicle in your myAudi account.
– When you call up certain Audi connect services on the MMI, it may be necessary to also enter your myAudi user data/PIN in order to connect the vehicle to myAudi. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Detailed information on configuration can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/myaudi.

Logging into myAudi in the vehicle

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Before you use some Audi connect services (e.g. Facebook), you will need to connect your vehicle to your myAudi account.

- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Login**.
- Enter your myAudi user data. **Or**: Enter your eight-character myAudi PIN.
- Confirm the entry with **OK**.

You can then use all the Audi connect services.

Note

You will receive your myAudi PIN after setting up a myAudi account. For more information, please see www.audi.com/myaudi.

An overview of Audi connect services

Basic functions

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect



Fig. 139 Audi connect overview with weather preview

Specific functions for individual Audi connect services may be available in the service's selection menu. This can be accessed via the Audi connect menu. Basic functions can be accessed in the relevant options menu.

- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect service* > right control button.

Depending on the Audi connect service you wish to use, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as a preview

You can have a preview of selected Audi connect services displayed in the overview (1) ⇨ *Fig. 139*.

Show on map

You can have selected content displayed on the map and use it for route guidance.

Read

You can have the MMI read out some types of content.

Navigate to

If an entry contains a location (e.g. in **City events**), this can be used as a navigation destination in the MMI.

Refresh

The content of the Audi connect service selected is updated.

Change search area

The search area selected can be changed at any time. For more information on search areas, please refer to ⇨ *page 150*.

Closing an Audi connect service

You can close an Audi connect service at any time and go back to the Audi connect overview, regardless of which function you have chosen ⇨ *Fig. 139*.

Travel information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on landmarks and tourism tips in the search area selected.

- Select an confirm a landmark to have details displayed.

Parking information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on places to park and parking fees in the search area selected.

- Select and confirm **Parking information**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You can use the right control button to sort the car parks **by distance** or **by availability**.

Fuel prices

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on filling stations with the cheapest prices for your vehicle in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Fuel prices**.

You can use the right control button to sort the fuel prices **by price** or **by distance**.

Weather

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on the current weather and weather forecasts for the search area selected (e.g. **In immediate vicinity**).

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Flight information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on flights and current arrival/departure times in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Flight information**.

You can use the right control button to select the information you require.

Train information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on stations, stops and current arrival/departure times in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **Train information**.

You can use the right control button to select the train information you require.

City events

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Information on events of different categories in the search area selected.

▸ Select and confirm **City events** > left control button > *a category*.

Online news

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

With this service, you can call up the latest headlines from your preferred news providers in the MMI.

Important: You must have subscribed to news feeds via your myAudi account and your vehicle must be connected to myAudi ⇨ *page 140*.

▸ Select **Online news** > *a headline*.

Note

If you have not yet subscribed to any personal news feeds in your myAudi account, pre-configured news feeds will be shown.

Facebook

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions of your Facebook account via the MMI.

Important: You must have a Facebook account and your vehicle must be connected to myAudi ⇨ *page 140*.

▸ Select **Facebook** > left control button > *function desired* (e.g. **News Feed**).

You can choose the following categories in the **Facebook** menu:

– **News Feed**: New posts (e.g. from friends or groups) are displayed.
– **Timeline**: Your Facebook timeline is displayed.
– **Messages**: Messages you have received are displayed.
– **Places nearby**: Places located near you (e.g. that have been recommended by your friends) are displayed. You can enter categories to restrict the search further.
– **Events**: Events to which you have been invited are displayed.
– **Friends**: All your Facebook friends are displayed.

Depending on the Facebook category chosen, different **Functions** will be available to you:

– **What's on your mind?**: You can update your Facebook status with the help of ready-made ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

templates or text blocks personalised using myAudi.
– **Where are you?**: You can enter your current location and make it visible to others.

Note

– Further settings (such as Account Settings and Privacy Settings) *cannot* be changed in the MMI. If you wish to change anything in these menus, please do so on the Facebook website itself.
– You can only connect *one* Facebook account to your myAudi account.
– You can use the Internet to add personal templates at www.audi.com/myaudi.
– Audi connect enables you to access the Facebook service. Audi cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of Facebook.

Twitter

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

You can access the most important functions of your Twitter account via the MMI.

Important: You must have a Twitter account and have connected your myAudi account to Twitter.

▸ Select **Twitter** > left control button > *function desired* (e.g. **Trends**).

You can choose the following categories in the **Twitter** menu:

– **Tweets**: All the tweets you have created are listed.
– **Home**: All the tweets from people you are following are displayed.
– **Trends**: Topics currently being favoured for discussion within a particular country.

Depending on the Twitter category chosen, different **Functions** will be available to you:

– **New tweet**: You can send a new tweet with the help of ready-made templates or text blocks personalised using myAudi.
– **Refresh**:The Twitter function selected is updated.
– **Favourite**: You can "favourite" a tweet to show that you like it.
– **Retweet**: You can repost a tweet to share it with other people.

Note

– Further settings (such as your account, language, Tweet privacy, and location settings) *cannot* be changed in the MMI. If you wish to change anything in these menus, please do so on the Twitter website itself.
– You can use the Internet to add personal templates at www.audi.com/myaudi.
– You can only connect *one* Twitter account to your myAudi account.
– Audi connect enables you to access the Twitter service. Audi cannot guarantee that these services will be available indefinitely; this is the responsibility of Twitter.

Audi connect services in the navigation system

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system and Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Navigation with **Google Earth** and **Google Street View** ⇨*page 159*.
– **Point of interest search** (e.g. restaurants): For planning a route via the MMI control console ⇨*page 150* and the speech dialogue system ⇨*page 116*.
– Adding a destination to your MMI via your **myAudi account** or **Google Maps** ⇨*page 159*.
– **Online traffic information**: Up-to-the-minute reception of information on accidents, roadworks and other incidents ⇨*page 161*.
– **myAudi special destinations**: Your personal special destinations can be imported to your MMI via an SD card.
– **Navigation map update service**: Navigation map updates can be imported to your MMI using an SD card.

Note

– The Audi connect service **navigation map update service** using an SD card allows you to find out which software version is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

installed in your vehicle. You can then check whether a new version is available at www.audi.com/myaudi. You can also have the new navigation data installed by an Audi dealer (carries additional charges).

– For more information on the **myAudi special destinations** and the **navigation map update service**, please see the Operating Manual for **Audi connect** at www.audi.com/myaudi.

Audi connect services for the telephone

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

The following Audi connect services are currently available:

– Creating contacts on your PC via your **myAudi account** and loading the contacts into the directory of your MMI system ⇨ *page 133*.

Audi connect services in the media menu

Applies to vehicles: with Wi-Fi audio player and Audi connect

– **Wi-Fi audio player**: To access the media centre of your player (e.g. smartphone) connected via Wi-Fi ⇨ *page 172*. Additionally, you can use the **Audi MMI connect** app to access **Internet radio programmes***.

– **Online media**: With assistance from the **Audi MMI connect** app, this function allows you to access and operate various online media services using the MMI.

Note

Please contact an Audi dealer for more information on Wi-Fi audio players and for a list of supported devices.

Further options

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

The following options are available to you in the overview of the Audi connect services:

– **Login**: ⇨ *page 140*

– **Connection manager**: ⇨ *page 187*

– **Licence periods**: The validity and the time remaining on your licences is displayed. If the **Licence expiry warning** function is switched on, a message will be displayed before the licence expires.

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to vehicles: with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use your MMI system as a Wi-Fi hotspot for connecting to the Internet on up to eight Wi-Fi devices. Small, light Wi-Fi devices that are not permanently attached to the vehicle must only be operated from the rear seats while the vehicle is moving.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: TEL button > right control button **Connection manager**.

▸ Select: right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

You can access the following settings in the **Wi-Fi settings** menu:

Wi-Fi mode

The Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. Set the Wi-Fi hotspot to **hotspot** before establishing a connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device.

– **hotspot**: The MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and visible to other devices. It is possible to connect to new Wi-Fi devices.

– **hotspot and client**: The MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active. An Internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (e.g. smartphone) can be established. You can search for your personal hotspot and connect to the MMI using **Network search** ⇨ *page 144* ⇨ *page 139*.

– **off**: The MMI system's Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. It will not be possible to establish an Internet connection.

Hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between your vehicle and the Wi-Fi device (laptop or mobile phone) is encrypted. Before a connection can be established, you must enter the following values/settings when setting up your Wi-Fi device (these values can be edited as required):

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Access point (SSID)**: Name of the Wi-Fi network.
– **Password**: A random MMI password is set at the factory. This password can be changed. The encryption type WPA2 requires the password to be at least 8 characters long. Please select a secure password.
– **Discoverability**: To switch the discoverability of your Wi-Fi network on or off.

Network search

A list of the Wi-Fi networks available near you is displayed.

WARNING

– Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – this can cause an accident.
– Laptop computers and similar devices can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary because of their weight; any loose objects can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
– No Wi-Fi devices may be used from the front seats in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings in the "Airbag system" chapter under "Important safety notes on the front airbag system" ⇨ *page 210, Front airbags*.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

– You might require a separate mobile phone contract with extra costs before you can use the Wi-Fi hotspot. For more information, contact your service provider.
– Depending on your mobile phone tariff, you may be charged for receiving data packets online via the Wi-Fi hotspot, especially if you are using the system abroad: We strongly recommend that you use a data flat rate. For more information, contact your service provider.
– For more information on Audi connect services, visit www.audi.com/connect.

Configuring the data connection

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

You must configure a data connection before you can use Audi connect services.

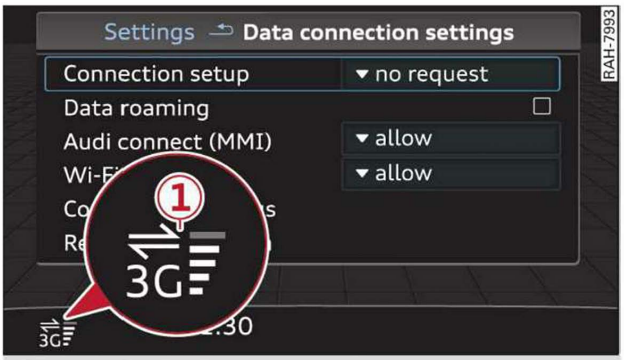


Fig. 140 Configuring data connection

▸ Select: TEL button > right control button **Connection manager**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

You can select when you would like the system to establish an Internet connection in the **Data connection settings** menu. The online connection is ended automatically when a requested Audi connect service no longer requires any further data.

The following options are available:

Connection setup

– **if requested**: A data connection will only be established on request.
– **no request**: A data connection will be established automatically for the use of Audi connect services.
– **never**: A data connection will not be established. It is then not possible to call up Audi connect services.

When a data connection has been established, a symbol indicating the active data connection ① ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⇨ *Fig. 140* appears in the status line of the infotainment display.

You can cancel an active data connection manually by setting the **Connection setup** option to **never**.

Data roaming

The **Data roaming** function is deactivated when the vehicle leaves the factory. **Data roaming** must be activated (☑) before you can use a data connection abroad. This setting is saved for the current SIM card/the mobile phone currently connected.

Audi connect (MMI)

With the **Audi connect (MMI)** function, you can **allow** or **deny** the use of Audi connect services if the connection is set to **no request** or **if requested**.

Wi-Fi devices

You can use the **Wi-Fi devices** function to **allow** or **deny** a connection to the Internet.

Connection settings

Depending on the SIM card used, the connection may be configured automatically. However, these settings can be changed. For more information, contact your service provider.

- **APN**: The system access point depends on your mobile network service provider and is assigned automatically.
- **User name**: The user name for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.
- **Password**: The password for your online profile is assigned by your mobile network service provider.

To store changed connection settings: Press the BACK button.

Reset configuration

An online profile is created and configured automatically. The **Connection settings** you have changed manually are reset to the default settings.

Note

- According to the factory settings, the data connection will be interrupted initially when you travel abroad to protect you from unexpected roaming charges. If you want to use Audi connect services abroad, you must first activate the **Data roaming** option.
- When using Google Earth you will be asked explicitly whether you want to allow roaming before the system dials into a foreign mobile phone network.
- For more information on roaming charges, contact your service provider.
- Further information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Notes on Audi connect

Audi connect services

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Note

- Audi connect services are only available with an existing mobile phone contract (or one set up separately) and if you are in an area with mobile phone network coverage. Depending on your mobile phone tariff, you may be charged for receiving data packets online, especially if you are using the system abroad. Because of the high level of data usage, we strongly recommend using an unlimited data plan.
- The mobile phone standard LTE* is not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
- In order to use Audi connect services, you will need a SIM card with a data option; to use LTE*, the SIM card will also need to have an LTE data option.
- The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Whether Audi connect services can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– Please also observe the notes in the chapter ⇨*page 123, Telephone*.
– Further information on Audi connect is also available on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect. For information on the conditions of your mobile phone contract, please contact your mobile network service provider.

Data protection

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Note

– AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that AUDI AG can provide the services and that you can use them. Your data are not passed on to third parties. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect services und allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.
– If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect portfolio you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case we pass on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. AUDI AG will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.
– Further information can also be found in your MMI in the appropriate options menu ⇨*page 110* of the selected Audi connect service.

Troubleshooting

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Subject	Advice
Audi connect services: Some Audi connect services are greyed out/ not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account: Detailed information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/myaudi.
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot: **Network search** is not possible (greyed out).	The Wi-Fi mode **hotspot and client** must be set to start a network search for your personal Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨*page 139*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

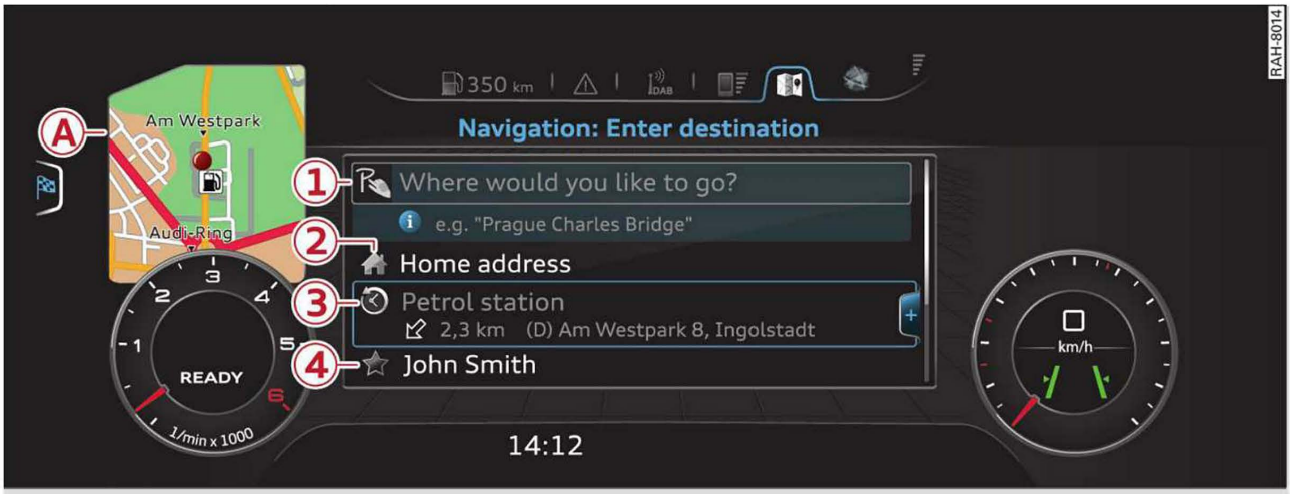


Fig. 141 Menu: Entering a destination

▸ Select: NAV/MAP button.

The **Enter destination** menu is shown on the infotainment display when you call up the navigation menu for the first time. The following information is also displayed:

① Entry field for the search function ⇨ *page 148*
② Home address ⇨ *page 149*
③ Destinations recently travelled to ⇨ *page 148*
④ Stored favourites ⇨ *page 149*

If you have connected a mobile phone to the MMI, your directory contacts are then listed.

Map preview

– Select an entry from the list.

When you preselect an entry in the list, the corresponding destination is always displayed as a map preview Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 141*.

Switching between destination entry and map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. **Or**: Press the left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– Today's driving conditions require the full attention of drivers. Please see ⇨ *page 192*.
– Pay attention to traffic rules when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation of how best to reach a destination. Pay attention to traffic lights, no stopping signs, lane change restrictions, one-way streets, etc.

CAUTION

– Should the navigation directions contradict the current traffic regulations, you must always follow the traffic regulations.
– The volume should only be set at a level which enables you to hear distant police and emergency vehicles clearly - failure to do so could result in an accident.

Note

– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or interference caused by trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception and vehicle positioning can also be adversely affected by ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
– Street and town names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI can in exceptional cases be different from the actual names.
– For more information on the navigation map update service*, please see the Operating Manual for **Audi connect** at www.audi.com/myaudi.

Entering a destination

Search function

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

You can use the search function to quickly and conveniently find a destination and use it for route guidance.

▸ Select: NAV/MAP button.
▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

– Enter one or more search terms in the entry field ① ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
– Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

The route will be displayed as an overview on the map. Route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

– Select: right control button > **Country selection**.

All countries are preselected for the search function at the factory. You can use the **Country selection** function to deselect any countries you do not require. This speeds up the search and limits the number of results in the list.

Note

– The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
– Up to 50 entries are stored in the list of destinations to which you have recently driven.
– For more information on the search function, please refer to ⇨ *page 114*.

Loading last destination

The last destinations are stored automatically and can be loaded again directly as a new destination.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

The destinations to which you have recently driven are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu and marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

– Select a recent destination from the list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Delete last destinations

– Select a recent destination from the list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm the right control button > **Delete**.
– Select and confirm **Delete this recent destination** or **Delete all recent destinations**.

The destination selected or all the recent destinations will be deleted and no longer displayed in the search function.

Entering an address

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.

– **To enter a destination via the country**: Select and confirm **Country**. Select a country from the list and confirm it. **Or**: Search for a country via the entry field.
– **To enter a destination via the town/post code**: Select and confirm **Town/post code**. Enter a town or a post code. **Or**: Select and confirm a town from the list.
– Select and confirm additional details for the destination such as **Street**, **House number** or **Centre**. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using a destination from the map

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

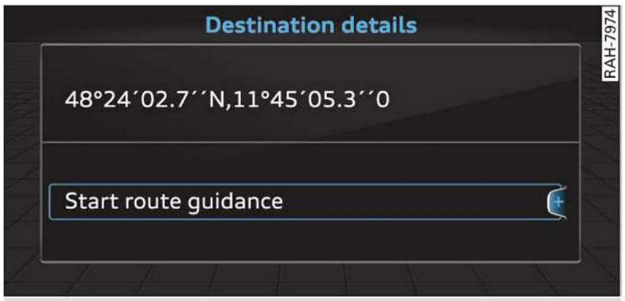


Fig. 142 Setting map position as destination

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **To set a convenient map scale**: You can turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise/anti-clockwise to be able to move the crosshairs faster.
– **To move the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton. The crosshairs will appear on the map. Move the crosshairs onto the destination using the MMI touch pad ⇨ *page 111*. To hide the crosshairs, press the BACK button.
– **To use the destination for route guidance**: Press the rotary pushbutton when the crosshairs are displayed. If you wish to set a stopover, select and confirm **Set as stopover** and then **Start route guidance**.

Additional information on the point selected with the crosshairs: If you use the crosshairs to preselect a location on the map, any existing information on this location (e.g. road name, address or special destinations) will be displayed ⑥ ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 147*.

Using home address/a favourite as the destination

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

The favourites make it easier to access destinations you require regularly.

Important: A home address/a favourite must have already been stored ⇨ *page 153*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

Your home address and stored favourites are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu and marked with the symbol ②/④.

– Select and confirm your home address/a favourite.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Note

– Further home address settings can be found on ⇨ *page 153*.
– Further favourites settings can be found on ⇨ *page 153*.

Using a destination from the directory

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

You can navigate directly to entries in the directory.



Fig. 143 Possible directory contacts

Important: A postal address must be available for a contact or a navigation destination must have been added for a contact.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

Directory contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and are displayed together with a location symbol:

① Business postal address
② Private postal address
③ Business navigation destination ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

④ Private navigation destination

– Select and confirm a postal address or a navigation destination. If you select a navigation destination, route guidance is started immediately.
– If you select a postal address, you can check the address details again.
– You can then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Further directory functions in the navigation system can be found on ⇨ *page 153*.

Note

– Addresses which you have imported from your mobile phone into the MMI can also be used as navigation destinations.
– If a directory contact is greyed out, no navigation destination/postal address has yet been added for the contact.

Entering a special destination

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

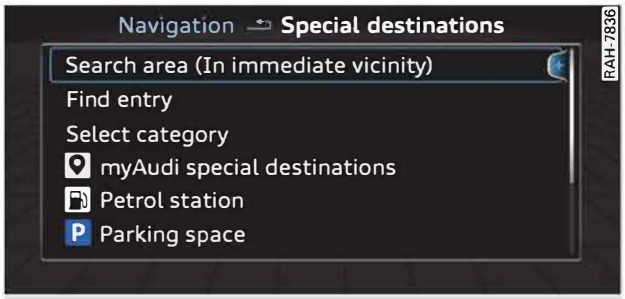


Fig. 144 Entering a special destination

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Special destinations**.

– **To change the search area**: Select and confirm **Search area** and then a search area from the list.
– **To find the name of a special destination in the selected search area**: Enter the name of the special destination.
– **To search for a special destination in a certain category**: Choose **Select category**. Select and confirm a category, for example **Restaurants** or **Parking space**.

The following search categories are available:

In immediate vicinity: You can select special destinations from different categories. The special destinations are displayed in a list, starting with destinations in the immediate vicinity and going up to destinations within a radius of 200 km.

In vicinity of route: Special destinations along the route can only be selected when the route guidance function is active. The special destinations are located directly on or in the immediate vicinity of your route.

In vicinity of destination/In vicinity of stopover: You can also select special destinations from different categories in the vicinity of the destination/stopover. For example, you can look for a hotel or a car park at the destination.

In new town: Enter the name of the town. You can select special destinations from different categories. You can use this function to find special destinations in any town irrespective of the destination currently set or the vehicle position.

myAudi special destinations

In **myAudi special destinations**, you can find personal special destinations which you have added in your myAudi account and imported to the MMI using an SD card.

– **To import new myAudi special destinations into the MMI**: Select the right control button > **Import myAudi special destinations**. Select and confirm the relevant medium. Select and confirm the files you would like to import to the MMI.

Note

– For more information on the myAudi special destinations*, please see the Operating manual for **Audi connect** at www.audi.com/myaudi.
– The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location (arrow not filled in). The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically (filled in arrow). However, the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

list of special destinations is not sorted again.
– Sometimes there are destination entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely because they are too long. If you select one of these entries with the rotary pushbutton, detailed information on the selected entry will be displayed automatically after a few seconds.

Online search

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system and Audi connect

You can look for special destinations online.

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 137*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area that was last set will be displayed in the entry field.

– **To change the search area**: Select and confirm **Search area** and then a search area from the list.
– **To find an online destination in the selected search area**: Enter a new town/country if necessary. Enter a search term (e.g. restaurant). Select and confirm an online destination. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
– **To search for an online destination in a specific category**: Choose **Select category**. Select and confirm a category, for example **Restaurants** or **Parking space**.

Please see ⇨ *page 150, Entering a special destination* for information on which search areas are available.

Note

– Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.
– Further information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Calling up destinations from a myAudi account

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

You can import navigation destinations from your myAudi account to the MMI.

Important: You must have created an account at www.audi.com/myaudi, added a vehicle to the account and stored one or more destinations.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi login details or your myAudi PIN. The contacts stored in myAudi will be displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact.
– Select and confirm a private/business navigation destination.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Note

– You only have to enter your myAudi login details once.
– You will receive your myAudi PIN after setting up a myAudi account. For more information, please see www.audi.com/myaudi.
– Further information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Entering a destination via the coordinates

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Geographic coordinates**.

– Select and confirm either **Latitude** or **Longitude**.
– Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anticlockwise to adjust the longitude/latitude.
– Press the rotary pushbutton to confirm your entry.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Entering a stopover

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

You can enter a new stopover while route guidance is active.

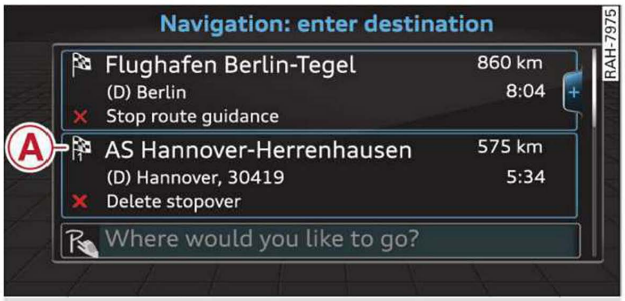


Fig. 145 Entering a destination as a stopover

Important: You must have entered a main destination.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨*page 147, Fig. 141*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the entry line ⇨*page 148*.
– Select a destination from the results list and confirm it.
– Select and confirm **Set as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

– Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. The search function and the active route guidance will be displayed.
– Select and confirm the stopover Ⓐ ⇨*Fig. 145*.
– Select and confirm the system request if necessary. The stopover will be deleted.

Further options when entering a destination

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Depending on the function chosen, the following options may be available to you when you are entering a destination:

▸ Press the right control button.

Stop route guidance: ⇨*page 152*.

Show location on map: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered will be shown on the map.

Parking at this location: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. All the parking facilities near the location selected are shown on the infotainment display.

Delete: The selected entry will be deleted. You can delete individual entries or all the entries (e.g. favourites or last destinations).

Audi connect for this location: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list. Enables you to search for e.g. **City events** or **Travel information** around the selected location.

Online traffic information*: The online traffic information ⇨*page 161* can be switched on/off.

Store as favourite: ⇨*page 153*

Country selection: Select all the countries in the list (☑) which, for example, you wish to include in your searches ⇨*page 148*.

Edit navigation destination: Important: You must have selected a destination from the results list and the **Enter destination** menu must be displayed. Select and confirm a line and change the destination.

Note

Information on online traffic data can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

▸ Push the rotary pushbutton upwards. The active route guidance will be displayed ⇨*page 152, Fig. 145*.
▸ Select and confirm the destination you wish to delete. The destination will be deleted immediately. **Or**: Press the right control button > **Stop route guidance**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding a home address

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
– Select and confirm **Create now**. **Or**: Select and confirm a destination > right control button > **Store as home address**.

A home address is stored in the MMI regardless of any mobile phone which may be connected. This home address is always available, even if no mobile phone is connected to the MMI.

Editing home address

– Select the **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination will be stored as the new home address.

Adding favourites

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

Storing a destination as a favourite

– Search for the desired destination using the entry field. **Or**: Select and confirm a destination from the list.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**.

Renaming a favourite

– Select: left control button > **Favourites**.
– Select and confirm a favourite.
– Select: right control button > **Rename favourite**.

Moving a favourite

– Select: left control button > **Favourites**.
– Select and confirm a favourite.
– Select: right control button > **Move favourite**.
– Move the favourite to the desired position using the rotary pushbutton.
– Press the rotary pushbutton.

Deleting a favourite

– Select and confirm a favourite.
– Select: right control button > **Delete**.

Adding directory contacts

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be stored as a destination for each contact in the directory.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Important: A mobile phone must have been connected to the MMI system.

– Select a destination > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.
– Enter a name. **Or**: Select and confirm a directory contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Store contact**.

Other settings

Navigation settings

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Always display alternative routes

When this function is switched on, up to three route suggestions are displayed on the map ⇨ *page 155*.

Filling station message

When the fuel gauge is in the reserve zone, a message will appear when this function is on. Confirm this message, and a list of nearby filling stations will be displayed. When you select one of the filling stations, the route to this station will be calculated based on the current position of your car.

Delete myAudi special destinations*

Destinations that you import from your myAudi account to your MMI are automatically saved. You can delete them individually or all at once.

Presentation mode

Use the **Presentation mode** to plan and "drive" a journey effectively without the need to move the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Select start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. Start the **Presentation mode** to simulate a route guidance.

Input help

When this function is switched on ☑, you can receive additional help when entering a destination using the search function ⇨ *page 148*. It allows you to have list entries transferred to the entry line. **Input help** is activated when the vehicle leaves the factory.

Route criteria

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

Traffic avoidance

– **automatic**: The route is automatically optimised using the current traffic information. If the MMI system does not display a detour route although the automatic traffic avoidance function is on and a traffic jam has been reported on the planned route, this is because the estimated time required for the detour is longer than the delay on the route with the traffic jam.
– **manual**: The MMI indicates that a better route is available and informs you of the potential time saving ⇨ *page 160*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.
– **off**: The route is not updated automatically. No optimised route is suggested.

Motorways/Vignette roads/Toll roads/Ferries/Motorail: If you do not wish for the navigation system to include motorways, vignette/toll roads, ferries or car trains when calculating the route, you can select the option **avoid**. You can also use the **Vignette roads** option to set the countries for which you possess a vignette.

Time restricted

– **avoid**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day (e.g. pedestrian zones) are excluded from the route calculation.
– **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables stored in the navigation data.
– **with**: Roads that are closed at certain times of the day are included in the route calculation.

Seasonally restricted

– **avoid**: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.
– **automatic**: The MMI system determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables stored in the navigation data.
– **with**: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.

Voice guidance

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: The navigation cues can be played in **complete** or **compact** form. You can use the **traffic** option to have the system play only those announcements on traffic obstructions that are relevant for your route. Select **off** if you do not want the system to play any navigation cues.

Voice guidance during calls: Navigation cues during a telephone call can be switched on/off.

Entertainment fader: Refer to ⇨ *page 190*.

Volume of spoken cues: Refer to ⇨ *page 190*.

Avoiding specific roads

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Important: A destination must have been entered and you must have started route guidance.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Exclude route**.

When route guidance is activated, a section of the calculated route that you have set (max 20 km) will be avoided if possible. The navigation system will calculate an alternative route.

The blocking of the route that you have entered applies only to the current route guidance; if required, the route section to be avoided must be re-entered.

If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

Displaying alternative routes

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

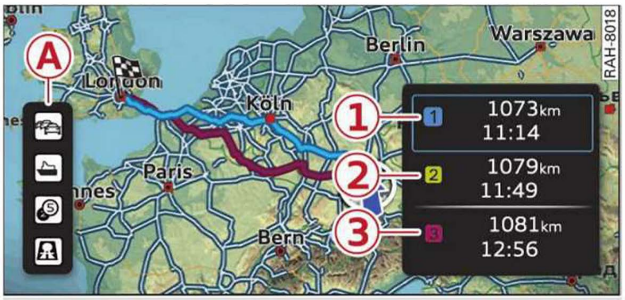


Fig. 146 Display of alternative routes

Important: A destination must have been entered and you must have started route guidance.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Display alternative routes**.

When this function is switched on, up to three suggested routes and their characteristics are displayed on the map ⇨ *Fig. 146*.

The following information (if available) is displayed in the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast (1), alternative fast (2), economical route (3))
– Distance to destination and estimated time of arrival
– Level of congestion on the route including length of delay

The route which was calculated on the basis of your route criteria is highlighted. You may also be shown further information on particular characteristics of your route (e.g. ferry or motorail connections) (A) ⇨ *Fig. 146*.

You can use the rotary pushbutton to preselect the possible alternative routes and have them displayed on the map. Select and confirm the route which you would like to use for route guidance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Map

How to use the map

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system



Fig. 147 Map with crosshairs switched off

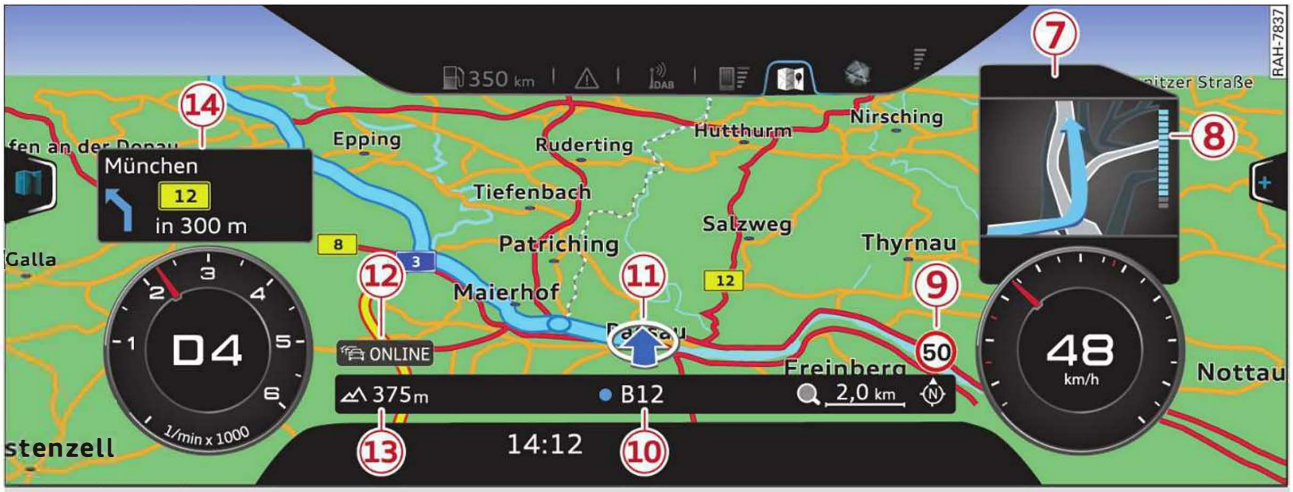


Fig. 148 Map with crosshairs switched on

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *Fig. 147*.

– **To switch between the map and the destination entry screen**: Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 141*. **Or**: Press the left control button > **Switch to destination entry**.

– **To switch on the crosshairs**: Press the rotary pushbutton while the map is being displayed.

– **To switch off the crosshairs**: Press the BACK button.

Crosshairs switched on:

① Orientation: The map is displayed either in the **2D north** perspective or the **2D driving position** perspective.

② Scale: Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise/anti-clockwise to zoom in or out.

③ When the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on, an “A” for “automatic” is shown in the zoom symbol.

④ The crosshairs: Move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch pad and select an item on the map as the destination. Alternatively, have information displayed on the map item. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(5) Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several special destinations are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map.

(6) Additional information on the position of the crosshairs: If you move the crosshairs onto a point on the map, any existing information on the current position of the crosshairs will be displayed. Press the rotary pushbutton to call up the destination details or start route guidance. If the crosshairs are switched off, the street you are currently on will be displayed.

(7) Display of an upcoming turn-off. If no manoeuvre is coming up, the remaining distance to the destination/stopover is shown at this position along with the estimated arrival time.

(8) If a directional arrow is displayed, a bar graph will also appear. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point.

Crosshairs switched off:

(9) Speed display[1)]: Display of the maximum speed limit on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads.

(10) Street the vehicle is currently on. When the vehicle is stationary, “offroad” is displayed here.

(11) Location of the vehicle

(12) Traffic information display (online or TMC/TMCpro)

(13) Altitude display

(14) Route information: Various information is displayed during route guidance (e.g. the upcoming manoeuvre including the calculated distance and road name). Traffic information or special destinations on your current route are also displayed.

Note

Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇨*page 154*.

Map functions

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨*page 156, Fig. 147*.
▸ Select: left control button > *desired function*.

Switch to destination entry

The search function in the **Navigation** menu is displayed ⇨*page 147, Fig. 141*.

Traffic announcements

Up-to-date traffic information is shown on the infotainment display. Further information can be found from ⇨*page 160* onwards.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when the route guidance function is active; it contains information on the route, road names and the length of the route sections. On motorways, potential parking areas and service stations will be displayed. You can select them as e.g. a stopover.

Special destinations along the route

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

You can search for special destinations along your current route. For more information, please refer to ⇨*page 150*.

Further map options

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨*page 156, Fig. 147*.
▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function chosen, the following additional options may be available in the **Map** menu:

Stop route guidance: Refer to ⇨*page 152*

Map settings: Refer to ⇨*page 158*

1) Applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Route criteria: Refer to ⇨ *page 154*

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨ *page 154*

Navigation settings: Refer to ⇨ *page 153*

Online traffic data*: Refer to ⇨ *page 161*.

Exclude route: Refer to ⇨ *page 155*

Display alternative routes: Refer to ⇨ *page 155*

Parking in vicinity of route: Parking facilities near the vehicle are displayed.

Store current position: You can store your vehicle's current position as a favourite ⇨ *page 153* or as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 153*.

Audi connect for this location*: Enables you to search for e.g. **City events** or **Travel information** in the location entered (events, weather at destination etc.).

Country information: With this option, you can view the speed limits for towns and country roads in the country you have selected. This information is displayed automatically when you cross a border in the route information (14) ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 148* if this is activated ⇨ *page 158*.

Map settings

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the function selected, you can use the following settings:

Map colours

day/night: The map is displayed with a light/dark background colour.

automatic: When the lights are on, the map scheme will switch from day to night.

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 148*.

Google Earth ⇨ *page 159, Fig. 149*.

Traffic ⇨ *page 161, Fig. 151*.

Map orientation

destination: The map indicates the destination and is set to face north.

2D driving position/2D north: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.

3D map: When this function is activated, the current vehicle position is displayed in a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel. If the map scale is more than 100 km, the map is set to face north.

overview: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale varies according to the length of the route and is adapted automatically. The map is set to face north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the street you are currently on, upcoming turn-offs, traffic information or special destinations on the current route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

on: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will also be automatically adjusted so that you have a more detailed view.

intersection: When route guidance is active and there are upcoming turn-offs, the map display will temporarily switch to a more detailed scale so that the road layout can be identified more easily.

off: The map scale you have set will remain unaltered.

Map content

The display of map content such as traffic information, favourite destinations, restaurants, and content from Google can be switched on ☑ and off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Google Earth map display

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system and Audi connect

You can have the map display satellite images using the Google Earth map display.



Fig. 149 Google Earth map display

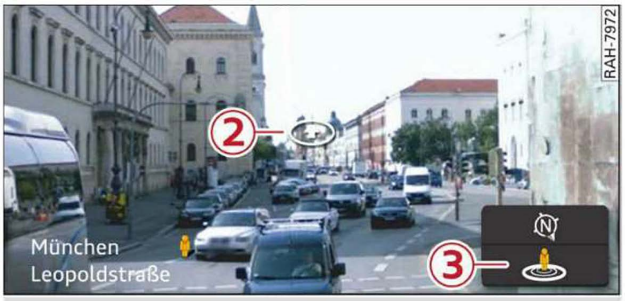


Fig. 150 Google Earth map display with Google Street View

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨*page 137*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Google Earth**.

For this map display the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the **Standard** map display. The MMI has a memory capacity of 2 GB for temporarily storing the map/navigation data received online (corresponds to map/navigation data for about 4000 km of route guidance). You can also use the loaded satellite pictures for route guidance without an active data connection as long as these pictures are stored.

Google Street View

With Google Street View, you can explore many locations all over the world virtually from the perspective of a pedestrian. Google Street View is available as soon as the symbol ① ⇨*Fig. 149* is shown in crosshairs mode.

To start Google Street View: Turn the rotary pushbutton to select a scale below 30 m.

The following options are available:

- – **To explore a destination step-by-step**: Press the rotary pushbutton when the symbol ② is visible.
- – **To zoom in/out of the current display (up to 4x)**: Turn rotary pushbutton to the left/right ③.
- – **To navigate in the street view**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Additional information

In the **Map content** menu ⇨*page 158*, you can activate the function to show additional information on the infotainment display such as Panoramio photos of landmarks/special destinations. To show the additional information move the crosshairs onto an item on the map and press the rotary pushbutton. You can now look at pictures of landmarks or special destinations, for example, and have information about them displayed.

Note

- – You can delete the data stored by the Google Earth map display using the **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨*page 187*.
- – Google Earth is an Audi connect service that is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
- – When the Google Earth map display is switched on and the position 3D map type is selected, the map display automatically switches to the position 2D map while you are driving through a tunnel.
- – For safety reasons, the Google Street View functions cannot be used while the vehicle is moving.
- – Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨*page 145*.
- – Further information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Calling up traffic information

Dynamic traffic avoidance

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Using the traffic information received via TMC/TMCpro/online - depending on availability - you can have the MMI guide you past traffic obstructions whenever possible. For this, the traffic avoidance must be switched on ⇨ *page 154*.

Traffic information (TMC/TMCpro)

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC/TMCpro symbol in the map:

TMC/TMCpro symbol	Meaning
Displayed	TMC/TMCpro stations are available and dynamic traffic avoidance is switched on ⇨ *page 154*.
Greyed out	TMC/TMCpro stations are *not* available and dynamic traffic avoidance is switched on.
Not displayed	Dynamic traffic avoidance is switched off.

Several traffic messages are summarised in the overview under the relevant road/motorway name.

– **To display all traffic messages for a road/motorway**: Select and confirm the symbol. A list of all traffic messages on the road/motorway selected will be displayed.
– **To call up the detail view for traffic information**: Select a piece of traffic information from the list and confirm it.
– **To show the selected traffic information on the map**: Select: right control button > **Show on map**. The hatched line shows the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.
– **To display the next piece of traffic information on the map**: Press the rotary pushbutton.

Traffic information display

Coloured warning symbols: Traffic obstructions relevant for your route are shown in the top section of the list in order of the distance from your current location.

Warning symbols with ⮌: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided.

Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route. They are sorted according to road category (motorways, major roads, other roads), country and road number.

Note

Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the rotary pushbutton.

Better route

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

By receiving traffic information via TMC, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving for the current route guidance. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

Important: The route guidance function must be active, traffic avoidance must be set to **manual** ⇨ *page 154* and the map must be displayed.

If your MMI has calculated an better route for the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** and the time saving will be displayed on the map.

Using a better route

– Press the rotary pushbutton. **Or**: Press the left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route will be displayed along with your calculated arrival time.
– Select and confirm the better route.
– The better route will be used for the continuing route guidance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Online traffic information

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system and Audi connect

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the Internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

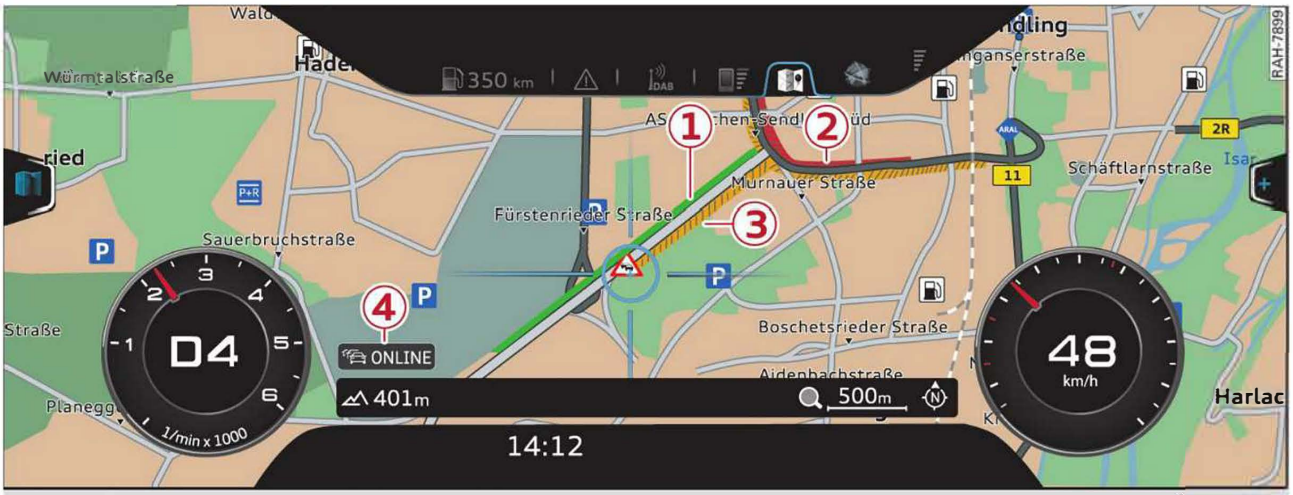


Fig. 151 Online traffic information on the map

Important: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 137*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **To switch on online traffic information**: Press the right control button and turn **Online traffic data** on (☑).
– **To switch on the traffic map display**: To have the traffic information displayed in the best possible way, select the NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**.

You can also have the **online traffic information** displayed on the Google Earth map display ⇨ *page 159* or the standard map ⇨ *page 156, Fig. 148*.

Symbol ④ ⇨ *Fig. 151* on the infotainment display indicates the reception of **Online traffic information**. If **Online traffic information** cannot be received, the traffic information will automatically be received via TMC/TMCpro ⇨ *page 160*.

Traffic information display

① **Green**: no obstructions

② **Red**: traffic jam

③ **Orange**: slow-moving traffic

Hatched markings show the stretch of road affected by the traffic obstruction.

Coloured warning symbols: A traffic obstruction is ahead (when route guidance is active).

Greyed out warning symbols: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.

Red warning symbols: If route guidance is not active, all warning symbols are shown in red.

You can adjust the settings for the display of the coloured markings, warning symbols etc. in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 158*.

The traffic information is activated when the vehicle leaves the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time ⇨ *page 152*.

Note

– Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.
– Every vehicle with active **Online traffic data** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. Should you not wish this ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

to happen, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is not yet available in all countries or areas.

Further information can be found on the Internet at www.audi.com/connect.

Troubleshooting

Applies to vehicles: with navigation system

Subject	Advice
Search function: The desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be stored in the navigation database. **Or**: Check that you have spelt the search term correctly and that the desired country has been selected for the search function via the **Country selection** option ⇨ *page 152*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Listening to the radio

Calling up the radio

The radio supports the following wavebands: FM, AM, DAB (digital radio).*



Fig. 152 FM/DAB station list

▸ Select: RADIO button.

After you call up the radio, the station list that was last open will be displayed.

To select a station: Select a station from the station list and confirm it. **Or**: Move the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ to tune to the previous/next station.

To set a waveband: Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears.

The following information is displayed in the FM/DAB station list ⇨ *Fig. 152*:

① Waveband

The current waveband of the station is shown in the FM/DAB* station list/DAB* station list.

② Radio text (short display)

Programme information for the currently selected station is displayed in all station lists when available.

③ Frozen station name (FM)

Station names with this symbol have been individually specified. Refer to ⇨ *page 164, Station names*.

Note

– The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.

– The DAB waveband* also supports the transmission standards DAB+ and DMB Audio, where available.

Radio functions

Search function

You can search in all wavebands by station name, programme type (e.g. **Pop**, **News***) or frequency.*



Fig. 153 Entry field and results list for the search function

– **To call up the search function**: While in a station list (e.g. FM station list), turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field for the **search** function is displayed. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.
– **To use the search function**: Refer to ⇨ *page 114, Searching*.

Stations from the favourites list ③ ⇨ *Fig. 153* are displayed in the results list ①. The symbol ② shows which station list you will switch to by selecting a particular station.

Further options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options may be available to you depending on the waveband:

– **Sound settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 190, Sound settings*.
– **Store as favourite**: Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Favourites*.
– **Programme guide**[1)]: Press the right control button > **Programme guide**. The current and next radio programmes are listed in the digital ▶

[1)] Not in the FM, AM station lists.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Programme guide for all supported stations. Select and confirm a radio programme to have more details on the programme displayed.

– **Manual station search**[1]: The frequency bar is displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**[1]: The previous/next receivable frequency will be set.
– **Radio settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 166*.

Announcements

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Announcements**.

Traffic announcements:

– **off**: Traffic announcements are not played.
– **FM**: Traffic announcements can be received via **FM** and played by the system irrespective of the selected waveband.
– **FM/DAB**:* You receive traffic announcements from both wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements:*

Depending on station availability, information (e.g. news, weather information) may be played when the function ☑ is switched on.

Volume of announcements:

Refer to ⇨ *page 191*, **Announcements**.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM** or **DAB***.

Displaying radio text:

Select the desired station from the station list. Select: right control button > **Radio text**. Additional information on the programme (e.g. artist, composer, track) is shown.

Browsing through radio text entries:

Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left or right.

Station names

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**. Select the desired station from the station list.

Variable station names:

Some stations use variable station names. Depending on how the station names are sorted, the position of a variable station name may change in the station list. You can lock the current name of a selected station permanently by selecting the **Lock station name** option.

– **Lock station name**: Select the right control button > **Confirm**. The locked station name will be marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 163, Fig. 152*.
– **Unlock station name**: Select the right control button > **Unlock station name**. The name received for the radio station will be displayed.
– **Change station name**: You can adjust the name of a station. Select: right control button > **Lock station name**. Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left to edit the station name. Enter a station name. Select and accept **Confirm**.

Detailed station information view



Fig. 154 Radio view: Detailed station information

Important: The system must be tuned to a radio station. The **detailed station information** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 166*.

① **Radio text availability** ▶

[1] Not in the mixed station list FM/DAB*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio text is available for the current station. Refer to ⇨ *page 164, Radio text*.

② Slide show availability

A **slide show** is available for the current station.

③ Picture view

You can choose to display a **Slide show** or the **Station logo**. Refer to ⇨ *page 166,* **Preferred image** *(DAB*)*.

Displaying the station list:

Turn the rotary pushbutton. **Or**: Press the BACK button.

Radio menu



Fig. 155 Radio menu (example)

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

To set the waveband: Select and confirm the waveband you require in the radio menu ⇨ *Fig. 155*. **Or:**: Press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired waveband appears. The station list will be displayed.

① Switch to media

The **Media** menu will be displayed. Refer to ⇨ *page 179, Playing media*.

② Favourites

The favourites list will be displayed. The menu item **Favourites** appears if at least one radio station has been stored as a favourite. Refer to ⇨ *page 165, Favourites*.

③ Last stations

The stations you have listened to most recently (from all wavebands) are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station to play it immediately.

④ FM/DAB*

The mixed FM/DAB station list* appears when DAB* is available. Refer to ⇨ *page 163, Calling up the radio*.

Other wavebands

If there are any available, you may be able to select other wavebands in the selection menu.

Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.



Fig. 156 Radio: favourites list

To store a favourite: Select the RADIO button.

– Select the desired station from the station list.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**. **Or**: Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

Important: At least one favourite must be stored in the favourites list.

– **To display the favourites list**: Select the RADIO button > **Favourites**.
– **To listen to a favourite**: Select and confirm a station from the favourites list.
– **To move a favourite**: Select the desired station from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the desired memory position.
– **To delete a favourite**: Select the desired station from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Delete favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Other settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

Depending on the waveband setting (FM, AM or DAB*), you can select the following functions:

Alternative frequency (FM, DAB*)

on: The tuner attempts to switch to an alternative frequency of the current station when the reception quality becomes weaker. When the reception is lost in the FM or DAB* waveband, the system will automatically (in the background) switch to an alternative station, if there is one available.

off: Switching to an alternative frequency is switched off. The current frequency will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received. The alternative frequency function is automatically switched on again when the station is changed.

Switch regional stations (FM)

Important: The Alternative frequency function must be switched on.

Some FM stations split up their transmission and provide different regions with regional programmes with differing content. When the function is on ☑, the system switches to alternative region-specific frequencies.

L band (DAB*)

There are two wavebands for the digital radio: Band III and L band. Ensembles in the band III usually have a larger range extending into several regions. They can be received at all times. In some regions DAB is broadcast in the L band. When this option is on, stations from the L band will also be received.

Station sorting (FM)

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order. Radio stations with variable station names are displayed after the stations which have been sorted alphabetically. Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

ID: The stations in the station list are sorted according to the station's ID (e.g. all BBC radio stations are sorted together). Radio stations with a frequency as their station name are displayed at the end of the list.

Station sorting (DAB*)

A-Z: The stations are displayed in the station list in alphabetical order.

Ensemble: Ensembles comprise various radio stations of a specific area (e.g. a town or region); they are listed together as an ensemble in the station list. To open/close the list of radio stations in an ensemble, select and confirm the ensemble. Available sub-programmes* (additional services provided by DAB* radio stations) are listed beneath the radio station (indented).

Detailed station info

When this function is switched on ☑ and the station or favourites list is open, the system switches to the **Detailed station information** view ⇨ *page 164* after approximately five seconds. If it is available, information on the selected station (e.g. station name, artist, slide show, station logo) may be shown.

Preferred image (DAB*)

You can specify your preferred image for the **Detailed station information** option ⇨ *page 164*.

– **station logo**: The station logo is displayed if available.
– **slide show**: Depending on availability, additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown (e.g. images from the studio, current photographs of artists or album covers).

Note

– If the **Traffic announcements** or **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button ② ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Not all radio settings for the FM and DAB* wavebands are available in the mixed station list FM/DAB*.

Troubleshooting

Subject	Advice
A station with poor reception is no longer listed in the station list after you switch to another station.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ *page 165*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Media

Introduction

The MMI system includes various media drives and provides various options for connecting devices. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the jukebox or connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it via the MMI.

Notes

General notes

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the SD card reader and the connection for the USB mass storage device*) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and audio/video* files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Copyright: Please note that copyright law applies to audio/video* files.

The MMI media drives do not support DRM-protected files; these files are marked with the symbol .

Data storage: Never store important data on SD cards, the jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading times: The more files, folders or playlists are stored on a storage device, the longer it will take to load the audio files/video* files. We recommend using a storage device which contains only audio/video* files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the audio/video* files, you can create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album). The loading time will be extended additionally if you are importing data.

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote. Nevertheless, metadata may not be displayed in some cases.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset the **Media settings** to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 187*.

If you experience restricted performance from the **Jukebox***, reset it to the factory settings ⇨ *page 187*.

For information on the characteristics of the supported media and file formats, please refer to ⇨ *page 177* onwards.

CD/DVD mode

CD/DVD and format limitations: In view of the variety of CDs/DVDs and the difference in memory capacities, the functionality may be restricted in the case of some storage devices. Under certain circumstances, audio CDs/video DVDs that are copy-protected or CDs/DVDs that do not comply with the standard audio format, and multisession CDs cannot be played at all, or the functionality may be limited. We recommend always finalising the burning process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

Handling CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: To ensure perfect, high-quality playback and avoid scanning errors or damage to the media drive, always store CDs/DVDs in a suitable case and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs (diameter 8 cm / 3 inches)
– Non-circular CDs/DVDs (shape CDs)
– CDs/DVDs with stickers
– Protective rings
– Cleaning discs

Thermal cut-out: In the case of unusually hot or cold outside temperatures, it is possible that CD/DVD playback will temporarily not be possible. A thermostat switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the reading laser.

Laser devices: Laser devices are divided into the safety classes 1 to 4, as specified by DIN IEC 76 ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers installed in your vehicle are classified as safety class 1. Lasers used in devices that fall into this category are very weak and well screened, so there is no danger if used correctly.

Media drives

SD card readers

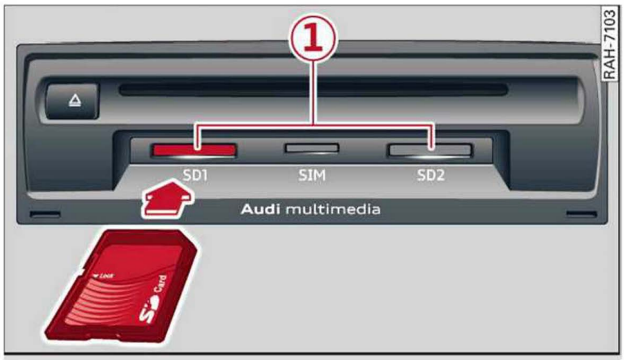


Fig. 157 Inserting an SD card

The SD card readers are located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

– **To insert an SD card**: The missing corner of the SD card should be at the front right. The writing on the SD card should face upwards; the contacts downwards. Slide the SD card into the slot in the card reader (1) until you feel it engage ⇨ *Fig. 157*.
– **Automatic playback**: When an SD card with supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 177* is inserted, playback will start automatically.
– **To remove an SD card**: Briefly press the SD card.

The SD card readers are called up and operated via the MMI (4) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 164*.

CAUTION

Only use one-piece SD cards. If you use adapter cards (more than one piece), the SD card can become detached from the adapter (e.g. caused by jolting, etc). Parts could then get stuck in the drive, impairing the functionality of the system.

Note

Store the SD cards in a suitable case to protect them from dirt and dust and to avoid damage.

DVD drive

Applies to vehicles: with DVD drive

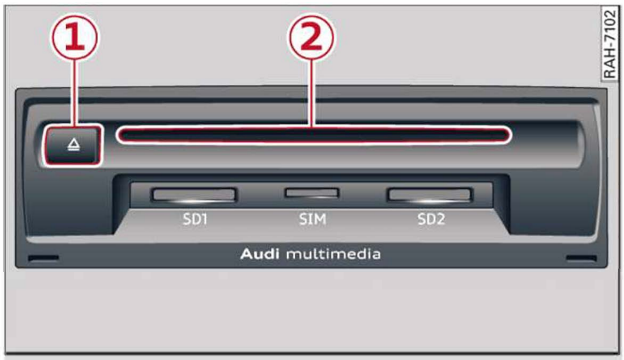


Fig. 158 DVD drive

The DVD drive is located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

– **To load a CD/DVD**: The CD/DVD will be drawn in automatically. Insert the CD/DVD (text facing upwards) into the DVD slot (2) ⇨ *Fig. 158*, holding it straight.
– **Automatic playback**: Playback starts automatically when a CD/DVD with supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 177* is inserted.
– **To eject a CD/DVD**: Press button (1).

After it has been ejected, the CD/DVD will be pulled back into the DVD drive automatically after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the DVD slot.

The DVD drive is called up and operated via the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 164*.

CAUTION

– Never use any force to push a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD will be drawn into the slot automatically.
– Do not insert any CDs/DVDs with stickers into the media drive. The stickers could become detached from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Playback cannot be guaranteed if the CD/DVD contains audio/video files with a high data rate.

CD drive

Applies to vehicles: with CD drive

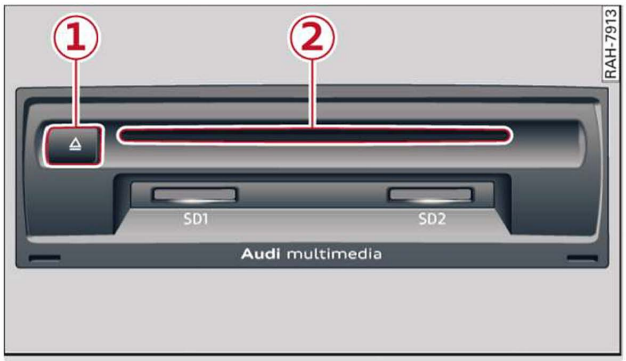


Fig. 159 CD drive

The CD drive is located in the glove box (20) ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

– **To load a CD**: The CD will be drawn in automatically. Insert the CD (text facing upwards) into the CD slot (2) ⇨ *Fig. 159*, holding it straight.
– **Automatic playback**: Playback starts automatically when a CD with supported audio files ⇨ *page 178, CD drive* is inserted.
– **To eject a CD**: Press button (1).

After it has been ejected, the CD will automatically be pulled back into the CD player after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the CD slot.

The CD drive is started and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 179*.

CAUTION

– Never use any force to push a CD into the drive. The CD will be drawn into the slot automatically.
– Do not insert any CDs with stickers into the media drive. The stickers could become detached from the CD and damage the drive.

Note

Playback cannot be guaranteed if the CD contains audio files with a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to vehicles: with jukebox

You can play your favourite music and video files from the jukebox. The jukebox has approximately 10 GB of storage.

▸ Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 179* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

Playing from the jukebox

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video files.

The jukebox is called up and operated via the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 164*.

Displaying the jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks will be displayed.

Deleting tracks from the jukebox[1)]

Important: The jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Delete entry**: Select an entry from the jukebox's media centre. Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deletion process will be shown on the MMI. During the deletion process the playback of the jukebox is interrupted; it is started again automatically once the deletion process has been completed.

Filling the jukebox

– Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ▶

1) Not in the **Now playing** view.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⇨ *page 179* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM*, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Important: The media centre (e.g. tracks, albums) must be open.

– **To select an entry**: Select an entry from the media centre. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Important: The playlist must be open. Refer to ⇨ *page 182*.

– **To select a track**: Select the track currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track/Entire album** or **This artist**.

Important: A video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying procedure will start and its status will be shown on the MMI.

– **To hide the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The copying procedure will be hidden.
– **To cancel the copying procedure**: Select and confirm **Cancel copying procedure**. **Or**: Remove the source you are importing files from. Files that have already been copied will remain stored.

During the copying procedure, the audio files are automatically sorted according to the categories in the media centre based on the metadata stored for the files ⇨ *page 180*. The video files copied can be found in the **Videos** category of the media centre.

CAUTION

Only copy audio/video files while the engine is running; otherwise the vehicle battery will be discharged.

Note

– For legal reasons it is not possible to copy tracks from audio CDs onto the jukebox.
– Files that have already been copied are detected automatically and cannot be copied to the jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video files* in the CD/DVD* drive while they are being copied.
– For legal reasons there is no export function for the jukebox.
– Files or tracks that do not include stored metadata are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends that you mark the audio files with the corresponding metadata (e.g. ID3 tags).
– When handing over your vehicle e.g. to a new buyer, reset the jukebox to the factory settings ⇨ *page 187*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to vehicles: with Bluetooth

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: To connect a Bluetooth device, the vehicle must be stationary and the Bluetooth function of your Bluetooth device and the **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 188* function of the MMI system must be switched on.

– **To connect a Bluetooth device**: Select the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** (7) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 165*.
– You may need to select and confirm **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The system will start searching for Bluetooth devices. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI will generate a PIN to establish the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN on your Bluetooth device to establish a connection. **Or**: If the PIN is already being displayed on your Bluetooth device, please confirm it on the device. You have about 30 seconds to enter the PIN code.

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

– Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
– Bluetooth devices only have to be bonded once. Any Bluetooth devices that have already been bonded to the MMI system once are connected automatically when they are within range.
– You can bond several Bluetooth audio players to the MMI system; however only one connection can be active at a time.
– The system supports the Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3) and A2DP.
– Please consider the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
– Which media functions (e.g. random playback) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
– For more information on which devices are supported, please go to www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.

Wi-Fi audio players

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Wi-Fi enabled media players (e.g. smartphones) can be connected using the Wi-Fi hotspot and operated via the MMI. You can access your player's media centre using a UPnP server app or a UPnP/DLNA server integrated in the media player. In addition, you can use the Audi MMI connect app to access **Internet radio programmes***.

Important: The Wi-Fi function of the media player must be switched on. The **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app must be installed on your media player, or you must be using a UPnP/DLNA server integrated in the media player.

– **To connect a media player**: Select the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 179* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** ⑧ ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 165*.
– You may need to select and confirm **Wi-Fi off** > **Activate Wi-Fi** to switch Wi-Fi on in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings** if necessary and use the Wi-Fi hotspot's settings for the media player you are currently using.
– **To start the Wi-Fi audio player**: Start the **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app, or enable media sharing on your media player. The first song from your device's media centre will be played.
– **To use the media player**: The media player is operated using the MMI.
– **To start Internet radio** [1]: Press the left control button repeatedly until the menu item **Folders** appears. Select and confirm **Folders** > **Internet radio**. Select the desired station from one of the folders displayed.

WARNING

– Do not allow the features of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from watching the traffic – this can cause an accident.
– Laptop computers and similar devices can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary because of their weight; any loose objects can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
– No Wi-Fi devices may be used from the front seats in the areas around the airbags while the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings on ⇨ *page 210, Front airbags*.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

– The Wi-Fi audio player only needs to be connected to the MMI via the Wi-Fi hotspot ▶

[1] Only available with the **Audi MMI connect** app

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

once. Depending on the device, a media player that has already been bonded will automatically be reconnected to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the MMI when it is within range.
– Inserting or removing a SIM card from the SIM card reader* causes the Wi-Fi connection to be reconfigured. This may cause a short interruption in the audio playback of some media players.
– Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.
– Please note that the Wi-Fi connection does not automatically enable you to use the Internet. Further information can be found from ⇨ *page 137* onwards.
– To avoid interruptions in audio playback, deactivate the energy saving function on your media player, or connect the player to a charger.
– The time it takes to load audio files depends on the media player in use and on the number of files stored.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are shown on the MMI.
– Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on Wi-Fi audio players.

Online media

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

You can start and operate various online media services via the MMI.



Fig. 160 Online media

▸ Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *Fig. 160* is displayed.

Important:

– The **Audi MMI connect** app must have been installed and started on your mobile device.
– You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function must be activated on the mobile device and on the MMI.
– A network connection must be set up on the MMI ⇨ *page 144*.
– **Online media**[1] (1) ⇨ *Fig. 160* must be displayed as the source on the MMI.
– One of the supported online media services must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with one of the supported online media services.
– Depending on the online media service, an app may need to be installed and set up on your mobile device.

Starting Online media:[1]

Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview ⇨ *page 179* is displayed.

Select and confirm an online media service.

Connect new device:

Switch the Wi-Fi function of your mobile device on. In the connection manager ⇨ *page 187*, select **MMI connect app** > *the desired mobile device*. If the desired device is not displayed, select and confirm **Connect new device** in the connection manager.

WARNING

– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and similar devices can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary because of their weight; any loose objects can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving.
– No Wi-Fi devices may be used from the front seats in the areas around the airbags while ▶

[1] Still under development at the time of print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the vehicle is being driven. Please also observe the safety warnings on ⇨ *page 210, Front airbags*.

CAUTION

In order to use online media, you generally have to set up an account with an online media service, which may lead to additional costs, especially if you are using the service abroad.

Note

– Mobile devices only need to be connected to the MMI via the Wi-Fi hotspot once. Depending on the device, a device that has already been bonded will automatically be reconnected to the Wi-Fi hotspot of the MMI when it is within range.
– Depending on the Internet connection, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.
– Whether **online media** can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– AUDI AG only enables you to access online media services via the MMI system and accepts no responsibility for the content of online media services.
– Please observe the notes in the chapter **Notes on Audi connect** ⇨ *page 145*.
– Depending on the mobile device you are using, media playback may be interrupted. To avoid interruptions, keep the **Audi MMI connect** app running in the foreground and do not lock the screen on your mobile device.
– Audi dealerships will be able to provide you with further information on online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters for Audi music interface or USB charging socket

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your mobile devices (e.g. smartphones, MP3 players) to the Audi music interface or the USB charging socket using the special USB adapters.

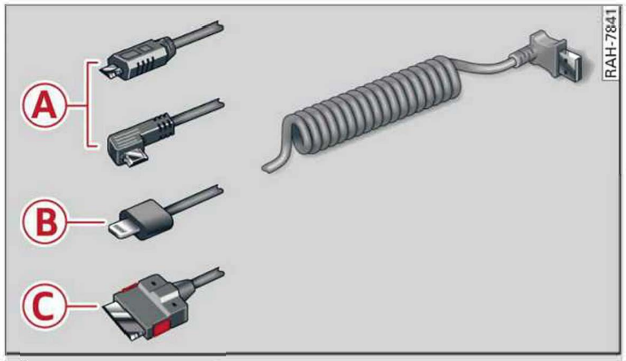


Fig. 161 Audi USB adapters

Ⓐ USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector

Ⓑ USB adapter for devices with Apple Lightning connector

Ⓒ USB adapter for devices with Apple dock connector

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to connect your mobile devices to the MMI using the USB adapters.

For vehicles with:

– **Audi music interface** ⇨ *page 175*
– **AUX input/USB charging socket** ⇨ *page 176*

CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audi music interface

Applies to vehicles: with Audi music interface

You can connect your mobile devices via the Audi music interface in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

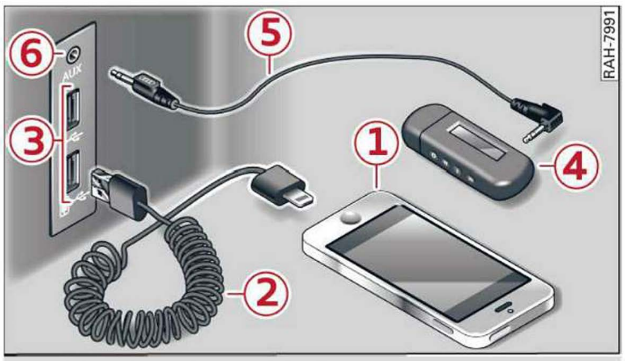


Fig. 162 Connecting mobile devices

The Audi music interface is located in the front storage compartment in the centre console (24) ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

– **To connect a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect the corresponding USB adapter* (2) ⇨ *Fig. 162* to the Audi music interface connection (3) and then connect it to the mobile device (1) (e.g.iPod).
– **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: When you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface (3) using an appropriate USB adapter* (2) ⇨ *Fig. 162* the device's battery is charged automatically.
– **To disconnect a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: Detach the USB adapter (2) ⇨ *Fig. 162* from the Audi music interface.
– **To disconnect mobile devices with Apple dock connector***: With the release tabs (C) ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 161* pressed, detach the Apple dock connector from the Apple device.

Depending on the device you are using, the media are started and operated using the mobile device or the MMI ⇨ *page 179*.

To connect two mobile devices: If two mobile devices (e.g. an iPod and a smartphone) are connected at the same time, the device that was connected first can be operated via the MMI. The battery of the second device will be charged. If two USB sticks or USB mass storage devices are connected at the same time, both can be selected as the source for playback.

You can connect mobile devices via the analogue **AUX** interface:

– **To connect a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 162* to the AUX input (6) on the Audi music interface before connecting the mobile device (4) (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
– **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 162* from the Audi music interface.
– **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** (6) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 165*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device (4) ⇨ *Fig. 162*.

WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the connection, please take care when detaching the connector from the Audi music interface.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter (⇨ *page 174*) to the Audi music interface; this could cause performance issues.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not meet the specification USB 2.0 will function properly.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Some iPod versions (e.g. iPod shuffle) cannot be connected with the USB adapter for devices with Apple dock connector*. You can connect these devices using the AUX adapter cable.
– It is not possible to play videos via the Audi music interface if the device is connected using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 161*.
– iPod/iPhone/iPad malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. In this case, please reset your iPod/iPhone/iPad.
– Please refer to the iPod/iPhone/iPad operating instructions for important information on how to use your iPod/iPhone/iPad. We recommend that you update the iPod/iPhone/iPad software to the latest status.
– For more information on the Audi music interface and on which devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an Audi dealer.

AUX input/USB charging socket

Applies to vehicles: with AUX input/USB charging socket

You can charge the batteries of your mobile devices using the USB charging socket. You can connect mobile devices using the analogue AUX interface.



Fig. 163 Charging the battery

The AUX input and the USB charging socket are located in the front storage compartment in the centre console (24) ⇨ *page 6, Fig. 2*.

AUX input

– **To connect a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 163* to the AUX input (6) before connecting the mobile device (4) (e.g. MP3 player, smartphone).
– **To disconnect the mobile device from the AUX input**: Detach the cable (5) ⇨ *Fig. 163* from the AUX input.
– **Operation**: Select and confirm the source **External audio player** (6) ⇨ *page 179, Fig. 165*. Media are started and operated using the mobile device (4) ⇨ *Fig. 163*.

USB charging socket

– **USB adapters**: You can charge your mobile device's battery using special USB adapters*. The USB adapters* are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Refer to ⇨ *page 174, USB adapters for Audi music interface or USB charging socket.*
– **To charge a mobile device using a USB adapter**: Connect your mobile device (1) ⇨ *Fig. 163* to the charging socket (3) using the corresponding USB adapter* (2).
– **To disconnect the USB adapter from the charging socket**: Detach the USB adapter (3) ⇨ *Fig. 163* from the USB charging socket.
– **To disconnect mobile devices with Apple dock connector***: With the release tabs (C) ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 161* pressed, detach the Apple dock connector from the Apple device.

WARNING

Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never use mobile devices while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

– To avoid damaging the connection on the Audi music interface, please take care when unplugging the connector from the AUX input or the USB charging socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

Note

– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which must be connected to the USB charging socket (3) ⇨ *Fig. 163* via a USB adapter (⇨ *page 174*); this could cause performance issues.
– The AUX adapter cable is available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information on its operation.
– It cannot be guaranteed that all mobile devices will function without any problems.
– Using a mobile device with the engine switched off will drain the vehicle's battery.
– Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to about 70 % of maximum.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video file specifications are supported by the DVD drive, the jukebox, the SD card readers and the connection for the USB mass storage device:

	Audio files				Video files*			
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 minutes) with CD text (artist, album, tracks)*; CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; video DVDs; audio DVDs compatible with video DVD; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 174* (e.g. iPod, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives)							
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB mass storage partitions**: max. 2 partitions per USB connection **CD/DVD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF							
Meta data	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px.: depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote.							
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC	MPEG-1/-2	ISO-MPEG-4; DivX 3, 4 and 5; Xvid	ISO-MPEG-4 H.264 (MPEG-4 AVC)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.avi	.mp4; .m4v; .mov	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX							

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Audio files		Video files*
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency	48 kHz sampling frequency	Up to max. 2000 kbit/sec, 720x576 px and 25 fps
Number of files	**DVD drive***: max. 1000 files per medium **Jukebox***: memory approx. 10 GB; max. 3000 files can be copied **USB mass storage devices and memory cards**: max. 10000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory		

Note

– The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media drives.
– We recommend a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
– The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.
– Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

CD drive

Applies to vehicles: with CD drive

The CD drive supports the following audio file specifications:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 minutes) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Meta data	**Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px.: depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote.			
Format	MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG-2/-4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Specifications	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec and 48 kHz sampling frequency			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	max. 1000 files per medium			

Note

– We recommend a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

Playing media

Calling up media

You can start and operate various types of media via the MMI control console.



Fig. 164 Possible sources in the media menu

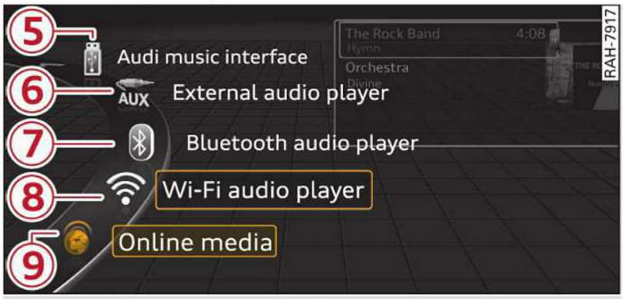


Fig. 165 Possible sources in the media menu

Important: A media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 169*.

▸ Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed.

You can select the following sources in the **Media** menu, depending on the vehicle equipment:

① **Radio** ⇨ *page 163*

② **Jukebox*** ⇨ *page 170*

③ **DVD drive*/CD drive*** ⇨ *page 169*/ ⇨ *page 170*

④ **SD card readers** ⇨ *page 169*

⑤ **Audi music interface*** ⇨ *page 174*

e.g. iPod, USB stick

⑥ **External audio player** ⇨ *page 176*

e.g. an MP3 player connected to the AUX input

⑦ **Bluetooth audio player*** ⇨ *page 171*

⑧ **Wi-Fi audio player*** ⇨ *page 172*

⑨ **Online media*** ⇨ *page 173*

– **To select a source**: Select and confirm a source. **Or**: Press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.
– **To switch to radio**: Select and confirm ① ⇨ *Fig. 164*.
– **To play audio/video files**: Select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (e.g. artist > *album* > *track/title*).
– **To access the next level up in the structure of folders**: Press the BACK button. **Or**: Select and confirm **Go up**.
– **To select the previous/next track/title/chapter**[1]: Briefly move the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console to the left/right (⏮/⏭).
– **To rewind/fast forward audio/video files**: Move and hold the ON/OFF button to the left/right (⏮/⏭) until the desired playing position has been reached.
– **To pause/resume playback**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button.

Note

– You can scroll rapidly through long folder/track lists by turning the rotary pushbutton quickly. The scroll speed depends on the number of folders/tracks.
– If the **Traffic programme** (TP) ⇨ *page 164* or the **DAB announcements*** function is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the ON/OFF button on the MMI control console. ▶

[1] May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

Media centre

Several categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media centre.*



Fig. 166 Example: Categories for a USB stick

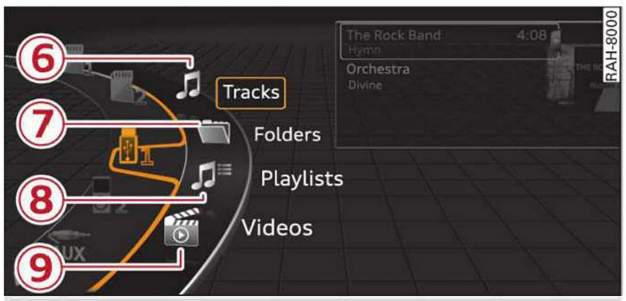


Fig. 167 Example: Categories for a USB stick

▸ Select: MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly until the source overview is displayed. Select the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The symbol for the active source ① may change depending on the device connected or the online media service in use. A USB stick connected via the Audi music interface* is shown as an example ⇨ *Fig. 166*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video* files from the following categories and copy them into the playlist:

② Favourites

The category **Favourites** appears if at least one item has been stored as a favourite. Refer to ⇨ *page 182, Favourites*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (e.g. **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a track.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder (if applicable) and select and confirm an item in it.

⑧ Playlists

All playlists on the source along with the intelligent playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Intelligent playlists:

– **Last tracks played**: The most recently played tracks from the selected source are displayed.
– **Most played tracks**: The tracks you have played most often from the selected source are displayed.
– **5 stars** to **1 star**: Tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
– **Unrated**: All files without rating information (e.g. ID3 tag) in the selected source are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Note

– Only the categories supported by the medium used are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected via categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The categories **Podcasts**, **Audiobooks** and **Composers** are available when you are using an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 174*).

– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
– If you synchronise a portable player with "cloud" services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.

Further options

Further options may be available via the right control button depending on the source selected and the current view.

▸ Press the right control button.

Options

– **Change play position**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left/right. **Or**: Move your finger from left to right across the MMI touch pad.
– **Random playback**[1)]: When this function is switched on ☑, all the files in the playlist will be played and shown in random order.
– **Repeat track**[1)]: When this function is switched on ☑, the current track will be repeated.
– **Play entire medium**: When this function is switched on ☑, all tracks from the active source will be used in the playlist at the next selection, regardless of the category selected. If the function is switched off, only the content of the selected folder will be used for the playlist at the next selection from the media centre.
– **Back to 'Now playing'**: This closes the options menu. The track currently playing will be shown in the playlist.
– **Copy to jukebox**: Refer to ⇨ *page 170, Filling the jukebox*.
– **Jukebox memory capacity**: Refer to ⇨ *page 183*.
– **Media settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 183*.

Important: A video file* or a DVD* must be playing, and the vehicle must be stationary.

– **Switch to full screen**: The video picture is displayed. Press the rotary pushbutton to show the playlist. **Or**: Press the BACK button.
– **Replay video**[1)]: When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will be replayed.
– **Display DVD menu**: The DVD main menu will appear on the infotainment display. To select a menu option, move your finger on the MMI touch pad and press the rotary pushbutton.
– **Audio track**[2)]: You can adjust the audio track (language and audio format) manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages and audio formats are available.
– **Subtitles**[2)]: You can select playback subtitles manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages are available.

Picture format option

We recommend using the **automatic** setting for the picture format. Depending on the active file or source (e.g. video file*, DVD*), you may be able to adjust the picture format.

Picture format	Information
automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio. Depending on the source format and the infotainment display installed, black bars may be displayed on the edges of the picture.
zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the infotainment display. Switch this function off if the picture is distorted.
cinemascope	Use this setting for films in the cinema format 21:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display. ▶

1) This function is automatically deactivated if you change the source.
2) May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Picture format	Information
original	The picture will be displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with **auto** selected is distorted or partially cut off.
4:3	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 4:3. Black bars will be shown on the edges of the infotainment display.
16:9	The picture is set to a width-to-height ratio of 16:9. Black bars will be shown on the upper and lower edges of the infotainment display.

Search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and video files in the active source.*



Fig. 168 Entry field and results list for the search function

Depending on the selected source, you can call up the **search** function.

Important: The playlist ⇨*page 182* or the media centre ⇨*page 180* must be displayed.

Calling up the search function

▸ Turn the rotary pushbutton to the left until the entry field Ⓐ for the **search** function is displayed. **Or**: Push the rotary pushbutton upwards.

To use the search function: Refer to ⇨*page 114, Searching*.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results Ⓔ ⇨*Fig. 168*. You can search by artist Ⓑ ⇨*Fig. 168*, album Ⓒ or track Ⓓ. You can also search for genres and videos.

Note

– The system will only search for files on the active source.
– If the search function is called up in the **Folders** category ⑦ ⇨*page 180, Fig. 167*, the system will only search for files in the current folder.

Playlist



Fig. 169 Playlist

The track, artist, album and, if available, the album cover are displayed in the playlist.

Options

Refer to ⇨*page 181, Further options*.

Favourites

You can store up to 50 items per source in the favourites list.

Important: The playlist or the media centre must be open.
– Select the desired item from the playlist or the media centre.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favourite**. **Or**: Press and hold the rotary pushbutton for several seconds.

If a track is stored as a favourite, the corresponding album is shown as a favourite in the favourites list.

Important: At least one item must be stored in the favourites list.

To display the favourites list: Select the MEDIA button. Press the left control button repeatedly ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

until the source overview ⇨ *page 179* is displayed. Select a source which supports *Categories* ⇨ *page 180* (e.g. an SD card). Select the **Favourites** *category*.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

– **To listen to a favourite**: Select and confirm an item in the favourites list.
– **To move a favourite**: Select the desired item from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Move favourite**. Select and confirm the desired memory position.
– **To delete a favourite**: Select the desired item from the favourites list. Select: right control button > **Move favourite** > **Delete this favourite** or **Delete all favourites**.

Other settings

Media settings

▸ Select: MEDIA button > right control button > **Media settings**.

Depending on the active source and the storage device used, you can select the following settings:

Sound settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 190*.

Input level

Important: A mobile device must be connected via an AUX adapter cable* or a USB adapter*.

The volume of the mobile device will be adapted to the MMI system. We recommend setting the volume of the mobile device to about 70 percent of the maximum volume.

Bluetooth settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 188*.

Wi-Fi settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 143, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

Connection manager

Refer to ⇨ *page 187*.

Child lock*

Important: A video DVD must be playing.

You can use the child lock to restrict video DVD playback.

Enter the child lock password. The password set at the factory is **1234**. The following options are available:

– **Safety level**: Select and confirm a safety level (e.g. level 5). Eight safety levels are available for the child lock function. If you select child lock level 5, all DVDs with safety levels 1-5 can be played. Playback of DVDs with a higher safety level will be blocked. Select **No restriction** to remove all restrictions.
– **Change password**: You can change the current password.

Detailed track info

When this function is switched on ☑ and the playlist is open, information on the selected track (e.g. the artist, album, album cover*) as well as the total and remaining playing time will be displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity

Information on the jukebox memory capacity and the number tracks stored on the jukebox will be displayed.

Note

– Not all video DVDs have a child lock feature.
– The **child lock** safety levels comply with the US standards of the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Please note that age ratings for DVDs may vary between different European countries.
– If you enter the wrong **child lock** password three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a password for approximately one minute. The password can only be reset by an Audi workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Troubleshooting

Subject	Advice
Audi music interface*/Bluetooth audio player*: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes on the **Audi music interface*** ⇨*page 174*/**Bluetooth audio player*** ⇨*page 171*. For information on which mobile devices are supported, please see the Audi mobile device database at www.audi.com/bluetooth.
Audi music interface*: When starting playback via the AUX input, the volume is too high/low.	Set the volume of the mobile device to about 70% of maximum ⇨*page 183,* **Input level**.
Audi music interface*: The portable player is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5% of its capacity). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.
Audi music interface*: Problems during audio playback via an iPod/iPhone/iPad.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇨*page 188* when you are not using a **Bluetooth audio player**.
AUX input: Interference audible when plugging in or unplugging the AUX adapter cable.	**External audio player** is selected as the source when the adapter cable is being connected. Activate the mute function (see ⇨*page 190*) or another audio source (e.g. ⇨*page 163, Calling up the radio*) before connecting/disconnecting your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player*/Wi-Fi audio player*: Playback problems.	To ensure problem-free playback, only *one* interface should be in use at any one time.
Wi-Fi audio player*: Playback problems.	Some mobile phones may experience audio playback problems if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established via the SIM card reader* of the MMI control console and the **mobile data** option is activated on the mobile phone. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your mobile phone.
Jukebox*: The tracks in the imported playlists are greyed out.	When importing playlists, you must copy all files yourself.
Jukebox*: Imported tracks cannot be played or cannot be found.	If you cannot find imported tracks via the media centre, this could mean that they are not supported. Please only copy supported files ⇨*page 177* to the jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player*: More than one device is connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (e.g. a smartphone) is shown as the source and cannot be changed.	Close the **Audi MMI connect** app on the connected devices (e.g. smartphones) that you do not want to use as the Wi-Fi audio player. Also close any UPnP server apps on the devices, or disable media sharing on any integrated UPnP/DLNA servers. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player ⇨*page 172*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Subject	Advice
Wi-Fi audio player*: Playback problems.	Some mobile phones may experience audio playback problems if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established via the SIM card reader* of the MMI control console and the **mobile data** option is activated on the mobile phone. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your mobile phone.
Online media*: Failure of connection between the MMI and the **Audi MMI connect** app.	The MMI connection switch on the status screen of the **Audi MMI connect** app must be switched on to establish a connection with the MMI.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System settings

Setting the date and time

The time can be set manually or via GPS.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**.

Set automatically

The time and date are automatically updated when this function is switched on.

Time

The **Time** can be set manually. The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated to do this.

Date

The **Date** can be set manually. The **Set automatically** function must be deactivated to do this.

Time zone

When selecting the correct time zone, a list of corresponding countries is displayed as an example.

Automatic time zone*

When the automatic time zone option is activated, the time is automatically adjusted to the relevant time zone.

Time format

When this option is set to **24h**, for example **13:00** will be displayed as the time. When it is set to **AM/PM**, for example **1:00 PM** will be displayed.

Date format

When this option is set to **TT.MM.YYYY**, for example **31.12.2013** will be displayed as the date. When it is set to **MM/DD/JJJJ**, for example **12/31/2013** will be displayed. When it is set to **JJJ-MM-DD**, for example **2013-12-31** will be displayed.

MMI settings

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the language of the display along with the language of the navigation cues* and the speech dialogue system*.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

Measurement units

The following measurement units are available:

– **Speed** (km/h or mph)
– **Distance** (km or miles)
– **Temperature** (°C or °F)
– **Consumption** (ltr/100 km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) or km/ltr)
– **Capacity** (litres, gallons)

Usage tips

Your MMI displays usage tips when this function is switched on ☑. They will appear less often as time goes by. You can switch the usage tips off at any time.

Speech dialogue system*

Command display: The display of possible commands during a speech dialogue can be switched on/off.

Short dialogue: This option can be switched on/off. When it is activated, the spoken cues played by the system are shortened.

Speech dialogue system volume: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the spoken cues.

Individual speech training (only possible when the vehicle is stationary): You can use the individual speech training to adapt the speech dialogue system to your voice or pronunciation so that the speech dialogue system can then better recognise what you are saying. The individual speech training prompts you to repeat 20 spoken phrases that consist of certain commands and blocks of digits. If you would like to delete the stored speech training setup, you can use the function **Reset speech training**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Factory settings

You can reset the following functions to the factory settings:

– **Sound settings**
– **Radio**
– **Media settings**
– **Jukebox***
– **Directory***
– **Telephone***
– **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi***
– **Navigation settings***
– **Navigation and online memory***
– **Speech dialogue system***
– **Message settings***
– **Apps***
– **Usage tips**
– **Audi connect***

You can select the desired options individually or mark **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Note

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their connection status.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.

If a mobile device has already been connected, its name and connection mode is displayed under the relevant menu item.

Telephone

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile phone.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded. **Or**: Insert a SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 126*.

Data connection

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all devices which have already been bonded. **Or**: Insert a SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 138*.

MMI connect app

Applies to vehicles: with Audi connect

Important: The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed on your mobile device and have been started.

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a mobile device (e.g. a smartphone).
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Music

Applies to vehicles: with Bluetooth audio player or Wi-Fi audio player

Audio player*

Important: The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 188* and the mobile phone must be activated.

– **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a new device.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select a Bluetooth device from the list of all devices which have already been bonded.

Wi-Fi audio player*

Important: The Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI system ⇨ *page 143* and your mobile phone must be activated.

– **To connect a new device**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi enabled device. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **To disconnect a Wi-Fi audio player**: Deactivate Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi enabled device. The device will be removed from the list automatically.

Directory

Important: No mobile phones are connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth remote SIM Access Profile or the **Handsfree** profile.

– **Connect new device**: You can search for and connect a new mobile phone. **Or**: Insert a SIM card in the SIM card reader ⇨ *page 126*.
– **List of devices already bonded**: Select your mobile phone from the list of all mobile phones which have already been bonded.

Further options

Further options may be available in the connection manager via the right control button depending on the function selected.

Bluetooth settings

– **Bluetooth**: When this function is on ☑, the Bluetooth symbol will appear on the infotainment display. The Bluetooth discoverability of the MMI can be switched on/off using the settings **visible/invisible**. Devices which have already been bonded can connect via Bluetooth even when discoverability is deactivated. Once you have connected your mobile phone, you should switch **Bluetooth** to **invisible** to prevent the MMI from being discovered by third parties. You can switch the **Bluetooth** function off. It is then not possible to establish a Bluetooth connection.
– **Delete Bluetooth device**: The selected mobile phone/device is disconnected from the MMI.
– **Display Bluetooth profiles**: You can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Car phone** and **Directory/contacts** individually.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: Switch this function on ☑ to be able to use the Bluetooth audio player as a source in the Media menu.
– **Bluetooth name**: The Bluetooth name of the MMI system (e.g. "AUDI MMI 2613") is displayed and can be changed.

Online settings*

– **Data connection settings**: Refer to ⇨ *page 144, Configuring the data connection*
– **Data usage meter**: The number of the data packets sent/received via the MMI system is displayed. Select **Reset data meter** to reset the usage statistics to zero.
– **Connection status**: The mobile network provider for data services and the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings*

Refer to ⇨ *page 143, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

SIM PIN settings*

– **Automatic PIN entry**: When this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is stored in the MMI after it has been entered for the first time. You can save the PIN codes of four different SIM cards on the MMI. If this function is switched off, the PIN currently stored in the MMI will be deleted. If the automatic PIN entry function is activated, the system does not ask you to enter your SIM PIN explicitly.
– **Deactivate PIN query**: The system does not ask for the SIM PIN when you switch it on. The automatic PIN entry function is ignored in this case.
– **Change PIN**: You can change the PIN code for your SIM card. First enter the existing PIN code for your SIM card. The SIM PIN code can only consist of numbers from 0 to 9. The new SIM PIN code has to be entered twice, as a precautionary measure, and is stored on the SIM card.

Network settings*

– **Registration**: To dial into your service provider's mobile network **automatic**ally or to select a network **manual**ly from the list of available networks.
– **Network selection**: You can use this function to select the available networks for the current position of the vehicle. This function is only available when the **manual** setting is activated for registration. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN query to be deactivated.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: Insert the storage medium with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 169*. Select and confirm the appropriate drive > **Start update**. The duration of this process depends on the size of the update.
– **Reset driver installation**: The media driver package selected is reset to the factory defaults.
– **Version information**: Information on the software version of the MMI and the navigation database* are displayed. In addition, you can use the **Software information** function to display information on the MMI's software and licence conditions.

On-board handbook

Applies to vehicles: with On-board Handbook

The On-board Handbook includes the Owner's Manual for your vehicle.

Installing/updating the On-board Handbook

Important: The storage medium on which the On-board Handbook is stored must have been inserted into the relevant drive ⇨ *page 169*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update** > **SD card 1**, **SD card 2**, **CD/DVD*** or **USB***.
▸ Follow the directions given by the system.

Starting the Handbook

Important: The Handbook must have been installed previously.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Handbook**.

The On-board Handbook will automatically load in the language that is set under the option Menu language in the MMI ⇨ *page 186*.

Using the On-board Handbook

The following functions are available when you are operating the On-board Handbook using the rotary pushbutton:

– **Select and confirm an entry**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the entry you require and press the rotary pushbutton.
– **Show a picture in full size**: Turn the rotary pushbutton to the desired picture and press the rotary pushbutton.
– **Call up the options menu**: You can return to the **Home** page, **Refresh** the content in the On-board Handbook, **Cancel refresh** of the content and open the **Index**.

WARNING

Not paying attention to the road traffic can lead to serious accidents and loss of life. Only use the On-board Handbook when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely. You must maintain proper control of your vehicle at all times. As the driver, you bear the responsibility for road safety.

Note

– The On-board Handbook is not available in all countries. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.
– Switch off the ignition while you are installing/updating the On-board Handbook.
– Please note that the On-board Handbook is not a substitute for the printed Owner's Manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sound settings

You can adjust the sound and volume of the MMI individually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

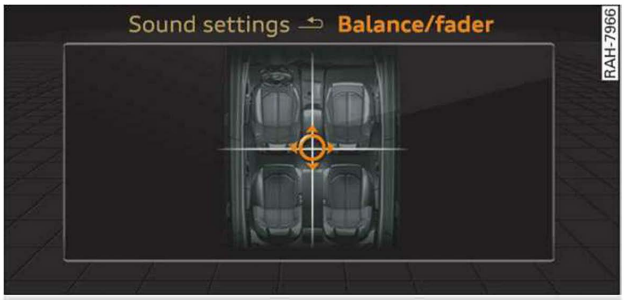


Fig. 170 Adjusting balance/fader

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble/Bass

You can adjust the settings for **Treble** and **Bass** by turning the rotary pushbutton. Any changes to the settings only apply to the audio source currently active. This allows you to set the sound for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (sound focus)

– **To set the left/right volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
– **To set the front/rear volume ratio**: Press the rotary pushbutton again. Turn the rotary pushbutton clockwise or anti-clockwise to the desired position.
– **To set the volume ratio using MMI touch**: Move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch pad.

Speed dependent volume control

You can adjust the automatic volume adaption to the interior noise level by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

Using the ON/OFF button, you can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

– **Volume up/down**: Turn the ON/OFF button ② ⇨ *page 109, Fig. 113* clockwise or anti-clockwise.
– **Mute/pause**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button. **Or**: Turn the ON/OFF button anti-clockwise until the mute symbol appears. Any active audio/video source will then be paused.
– **Unmute/resume**: Briefly press the ON/OFF button. **Or**: Turn the ON/OFF button clockwise.

Note

When you switch on the MMI system, very high/very low volume levels are automatically reduced/increased to a preset level.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Mute telephone: Messages and ring tones are silenced.

Ring tone: Refer to ⇨ *page 135,* **Ring tone and volume settings**.

Ring tone volume: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the ring tone selected.

Message volume: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the tone indicating receipt of a text message.

Microphone input level: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of a telephone call while you are on the phone.

Navigation

Voice guidance: Refer to ⇨ *page 154, Voice guidance.* ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice guidance during calls: Refer to ⇨ *page 154, Voice guidance*.

Volume of spoken cues: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the spoken cues while route guidance is active.

Entertainment fader: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced when the parking aid is active or while a navigation cue is being played.

Announcements

Traffic announcements: Refer to ⇨ *page 164*.

DAB announcements*: Refer to ⇨ *page 164*.

Volume of announcements: You can adjust the volume of a traffic announcement by turning the rotary pushbutton.

Speech dialogue system

Short dialogue: This option can be switched on/off. When it is activated, the spoken cues played by the system are shortened.

Speech dialogue system volume: Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the spoken cues.

Parking aid

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the beeps.

MMI touch

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the MMI touch's spoken cues.

Audi heartbeat

Turn the rotary pushbutton to adjust the volume of the Audi heartbeat.

Restarting the MMI system (Reset)

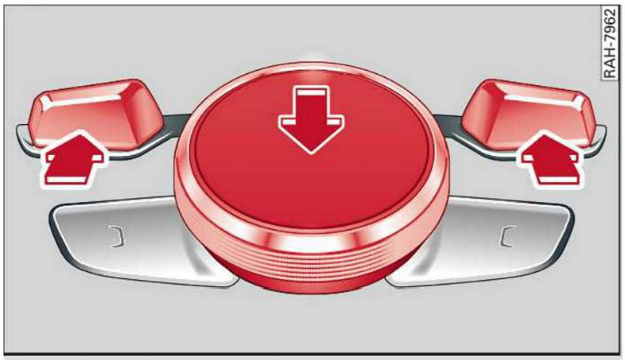


Fig. 171 Combination of buttons for restart

▸ Briefly press the rotary pushbutton and *simultaneously* press the two rocker switches upwards ⇨ *Fig. 171*.

Notes on software licences

For information on the MMI system's software and its licence conditions, select the MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information** or go to www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safe driving

General notes

Safety is the first priority

Your safety is our first priority.

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

WARNING

- The information in this chapter is important for the driver of the vehicle and all passengers. The other chapters in this manual (and, where applicable, in the other literature supplied with the vehicle) contain further important notes which you should read and observe for your own safety and that of your passengers.
- Ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Notes on traffic safety

You should only use certain infotainment system functions, e.g. enter a navigation destination, while the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

- Today's driving conditions require your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, only operate the infotainment system when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle - risk of accident!
- The volume of the audio sources (radio, CD player, etc.) should only be set at a level which enables you to hear distant police and emergency vehicles clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.
- Please observe the laws regulating the use of telephones in vehicles.

Safety features

The safety features listed here are part of the vehicle's occupant restraint system. They work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. In the event of an accident, the safety features incorporated in your vehicle are capable of reducing the risk of injury. These are just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- Seat belts for all seats
- Belt force limiters for all seats
- Belt tensioners for the front seats
- Front airbags
- Side airbags in the front seat backrests
- Head-protection airbags
- “ISOFIX” anchorages* for “ISOFIX” child seats on the rear seats
- Adjustable steering column

These individual safety features are harmonised to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in accident situations. However, they can only be effective if you and your passengers sit in the correct position and adjust and use the safety equipment properly.

For these reasons, this chapter explains why these safety features are so important, how they can protect you, what you need to remember when using them, and how you and your passengers can gain the most benefit from them. There are also a number of important safety warnings which you and your passengers should always observe in order to minimise the risk of injury.

Safety is everyone's responsibility!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before every trip

The driver is responsible for the safety of the passengers and the safe operation of the vehicle at all times.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Make sure that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- Check the tyre pressures.
- Make sure that all windows are clean and give good visibility to the outside.
- Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 201*.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust the mirrors and the front seat according to your body height.
- Make sure that children are protected with suitable safety seats and properly worn seat belts ⇨ *page 195*.
- Sit in the correct position in your seat. Make sure that your passengers are sitting in the correct positions ⇨ *page 46*.
- Fasten your seat belt correctly. Make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 204*.

What factors can impair your safety?

Safety on the road is directly related to how you drive, and can also be affected by the passengers in the vehicle.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired in any way, you endanger yourself and other road users ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a mobile phone, etc.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medication, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Obey all traffic regulations and speed limits and always maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.
- Always adjust your speed to suit the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours without a stop.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

– Distractions while driving or any kind of impairment to your driving ability increase the risk of accident and injury.

– Do not place loose objects on the dash panel. These objects could fly around the interior when the vehicle is moving (under acceleration or whilst cornering) and distract the driver – risk of accident!

Correct sitting positions

Correct driving position

The correct driving position is important for safe driving.

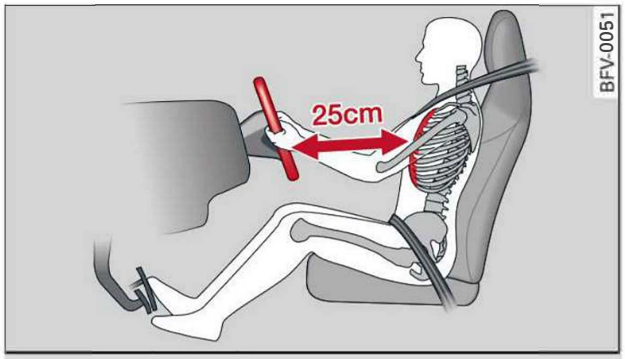


Fig. 172 Adjust seat and sit in correct position

For your own safety, and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following driving position.

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 172*.
- Adjust the height and fore/aft position of the driver's seat so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor without fully straightening your legs ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Adjust the longitudinal position of the steering wheel so that your arms are slightly bent and you can read the dials and instruments easily.
- ▸ Make sure that you can comfortably reach the top of the steering wheel.
- ▸ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 204*.
- ▸ Keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in full control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.

WARNING

A driver who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered.

- – Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 172*.
- – While driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- – Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- – To reduce any risk of injury to the driver during a sudden brake application or in an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted too far back. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.

Correct position for the front passenger

The front seat passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag has enough room to inflate and give maximum protection in an accident.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend adjusting the front passenger's seat as follows:

- ▸ Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery.
- ▸ Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the seat.
- ▸ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 206*.

In **exceptional cases** you can disable the front passenger's airbag via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 211*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.

WARNING

A passenger who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered.

- – Adjust the front passenger's seat so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel.
- – Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the seat. If you sit in an incorrect position, you increase your risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain potentially fatal injuries by sitting out of position.
- – To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in the case of sudden braking or an accident, the passenger should never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belt can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the passenger is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.

Correct position for rear passengers

Rear seat passengers should sit upright with both feet on the floor and wear their seat belts properly whenever the vehicle is moving.

To reduce any risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident, passengers in the rear seats must observe the following:

- ▸ Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- ▸ Fasten the seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 207*.
- ▸ Use appropriate child restraint systems for children travelling in the vehicle ⇨ *page 195*.

WARNING

Rear passengers sitting out of position can suffer severe injuries.

– Seat belts only offer maximum protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the passengers are wearing the seat belts properly. By not sitting upright, rear passengers increase the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt webbing.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Occupants can suffer severe or fatal injuries if they sit in an incorrect position while the vehicle is moving.

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed. The driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants, especially for children.

- ▸ Never allow anyone to sit out of position while the vehicle is moving ⇨ ⚠.

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– Never stand up in the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
– Never lean against the dash panel.
– Never lie down on the rear seat.
– Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
– Never sit sideways.
– Never lean out of the window.
– Never put your feet out of the window.
– Never put your feet on the dash panel.
– Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
– Never climb into the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Sitting out of position increases the risk of severe injuries.

– Sitting out of position exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries: if the airbags inflate they can strike any occupant who is not in one of the designed seat positions.
– Before starting a trip, sit in the correct position and stay in this position as long as the vehicle is moving. Before every trip, make sure all passengers are sitting in the correct positions and remain correctly seated at all times ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.

Child seats

Safety notes for using child seats

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must always use child restraint systems when travelling in the car.

Please note the information in this Owner's Manual when installing and using child seats. Follow ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements.

For safety reasons, we recommend that child seats be installed on the rear seats. You should only use a child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.45 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle if there are no suitable child seats. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Babies and children must never travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child seat.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, causing possibly fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇨ *page 206*. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect sitting position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- If you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child faces the direction of travel, you should move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the front passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.
  - Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat.
  - Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 211*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- Always replace the child seat with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

Child safety and side airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags



Fig. 173 Illustration of a dangerous sitting position near the opening for the side airbag

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Make sure that children do not lean out of the child seat towards the door trim. If the side airbag were to inflate in an accident, it could strike the child on the head and cause serious injury.

WARNING

– To avoid injury, the child's head must always be well away from the opening for the side airbag.
– Do not leave or place any objects in the area of inflation for the side airbag – risk of injury!

Child seat categories

Only use child restraint systems that are officially approved and suitable for the child.



Fig. 174 Child seat categories

Child restraint systems are covered by the European standard ECE-R 44. An orange label is usually attached to child seats which have been tested in accordance with this standard. Information on weight categories, ISOFIX size class and the approval category of the child seat can be found on this label.

Child seats are divided into five weight categories:

Child seats: categories 0 and 0+

Rearward-facing carry cots are most appropriate for these categories (up to 13 kg). Our recommendation: Audi carry cot with optional ISOFIX base.

Child seats: category 1

In this category (9 to 18 kg), rearward or forward-facing child seats with an integrated seat belt system are most appropriate. Rearward-facing child seats should be used for as long as safely possible. Our recommendation: Audi child seat with ISOFIX base.

Child seats: categories 2 and 3

Child seats with backrests used in conjunction with seat belts are most appropriate for these categories (15 to 36 kg). Our recommendation: Audi child seat "youngster plus".

WARNING

– Categories 0, 0+ and 1 (rearward-facing): Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child. If you have no alternative but to let a child travel on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated* beforehand ⇨ *page 211*.
– Categories 1 (forward-facing), 2 and 3: The back of the child seat should be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat.
– Categories 2 and 3: The shoulder section of the belt must be fitted across the centre of the child's collar bone close to the torso. It must never run against or across the neck. The lap belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and not over the stomach or abdomen. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.

Note

We recommend child seats from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories: www.audi.com/childseats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Group 3 child seats (rear seat)

Applies to vehicles: with rear seat approved as a Group 3 child seat



Fig. 175 Label on the rear seat



Fig. 176 Child in the rear seat

Rear seat

Children from the age of around 7 and a height of approx. 1.30 m to 1.45 m are best seated in the rear seat.

The label on the rear seat ⇨ *Fig. 175* tells you whether the rear seat of the vehicle has been tested as a Group 3 child seat and approved under the ECE-R 44 standard. Children should be buckled in **without a child seat** with the normal three-point seat belt.

WARNING

– The shoulder section of the belt must be fitted across the centre of the collar bone close to the upper body. It must never run against or across the neck. The lap belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and not over the stomach or abdomen. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.
– The distance between the occupant's head and the rear window must be at least 2.5 cm when sitting upright in the rear seat - otherwise serious head injuries could be caused when closing the boot lid or in the event of an accident. Always pay close attention to passengers in the rear seat when closing the boot lid.

Securing a child seat

Securing child seats with ISOFIX

Applies to vehicles: with ISOFIX

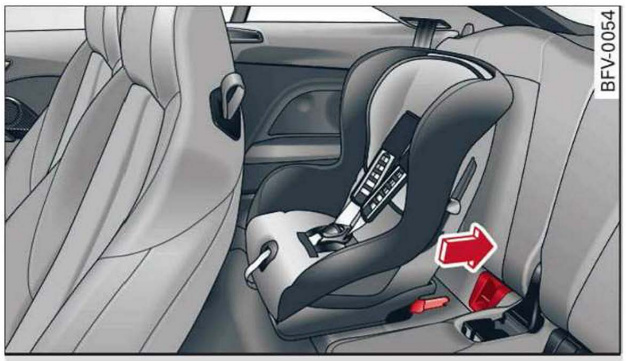


Fig. 177 Rear seat: Securing child seat with ISOFIX

Child seats of the categories 0, 0+ and 1 with ISOFIX can be secured without a seat belt using the ISOFIX anchorages on the rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*.

- ▸ Push the mountings on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorages until they engage audibly ⇨ *Fig. 177*.
- ▸ Pull on the child seat to check whether both sides have engaged properly.

If you wish to attach an ISOFIX child seat to the ISOFIX anchorages in your vehicle, please ensure that it is approved for the seats in your vehicle. The following table ⇨ *table on page 199* shows the installation options. The necessary information can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

An ISOFIX child seat categorised as “vehicle-specific”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” (**IL**) is suitable for a seat if:

– your vehicle is listed in the model list provided by the child seat manufacturer and
– your child seat is marked with IL in the following table. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

An ISOFIX child seat categorised as “universal”, (**IUF**) is suitable for a seat if:

– your child seat is marked with IUF in the following table and
– the child seat can be secured with top tether[1)] ⇨ *page 199*.

Weight class	ISOFIX size category	Outer rear seats	Front passenger's seat[a)]
Category 0: up to 10 kg	E	IL	IL
Category 0+: up to 13 kg	E	IL	IL
	D		
	C		
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D	IL IUF[b)]	IL
	C		
	B		
	B1		
	A		
Category 2/3: 15 to 36 kg	-	x	IL[c)]

a) This function is not available for all export versions.

b) Only ISOFIX size categories B and B1 may be fitted on the (outer) rear seats.

c) It may be necessary to adjust the backrest angle in order to fit the child seat correctly.

WARNING

– Note the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety notes for using child seats on page 196*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Child seat categories on page 197* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
– Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.
– The anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child seats with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child seat, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages - this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child seats with ISOFIX and top tether

Applies to vehicles: with top tether

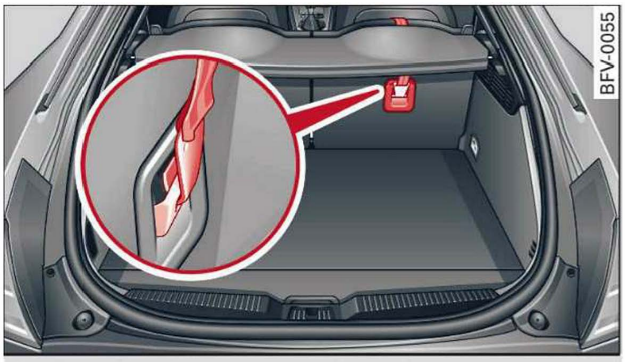


Fig. 178 Rear backrest: Top tether anchorages

- Push the mountings on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorages until they engage audibly ⇨ *page 198, Fig. 177*.
- Pull on the child seat to check whether both sides have engaged properly.
- Guide the top tether strap of the child seat towards the rear into the luggage compartment.
- Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage[1)] ⇨ *Fig. 178*.
- Pull the tether strap tight so that the top of the child seat rests securely against the backrest.

WARNING

– Note the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety notes for using child seats on page 196*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Child seat categories on page 197* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
– The anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for one child seat with ISOFIX and top tether. Do not attempt to secure other types of child seat, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages - this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

1) This function is not available for all export versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing child seats with seat belt

If you wish to use a child seat in the approval category "universal" (**u**), please ensure that it is approved for the seats in your vehicle. The following table shows the installation options. The necessary information can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

Weight class	Front passenger's seat	Rear seats
Category 0 up to 10 kg	**u**	**u**
Category 0+ up to 13 kg	**u**	**u**
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	**u**	**u**
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	**u**	**u**
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	**u**	**u**

To adjust the front passenger's seat to the child seat and to achieve the best possible seat belt positioning, move

– the front passenger's backrest as far forward as possible and
– the front passenger's seat as far upwards as possible.

WARNING

– Note the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety notes for using child seats on page 196*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Child seat categories on page 197* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
– Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be obstructed by floor mats or any objects in the footwell.

▸ Make sure that none of the pedals is obstructed and all of the pedals can be pressed all the way down to the floor.
▸ Make sure that all pedals are able to return freely to their original positions.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If one of the brake circuits should fail, increased brake pedal travel will be required to bring the vehicle safely to a stop.

WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and critical situations in traffic.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.

Floor mats on the driver's side

Use only floor mats which can be securely fastened in the footwell and do not obstruct the pedals.

▸ Make sure that floor mats are securely fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and are firmly secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your dealer or a specialist retailer.

WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay or install additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.

Stowing luggage safely

Luggage compartment

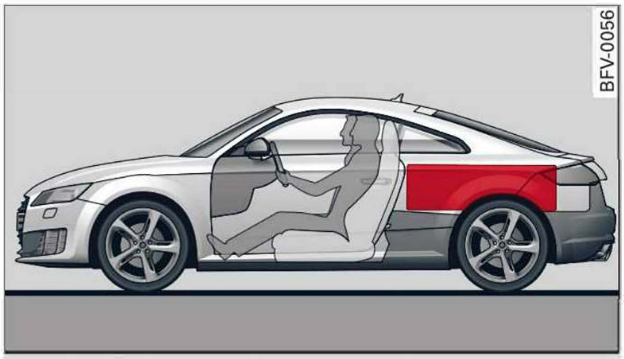


Fig. 179 Heavy items should be placed as far forwards as possible.

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and secure them properly ⇨ *Fig. 179*.
- Secure the load with the luggage net* or with non-elastic straps secured to the fastening rings* ⇨ *page 202*.

WARNING

– Loose items in the luggage compartment are a safety hazard: they can move suddenly and impair the handling of the vehicle as a result of the change in weight distribution.
– In an accident or a sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward – risk of injury! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings*. Use suitable securing straps, particularly when transporting heavy objects.
– Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
– Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇨ *page 257*. Exceeding the permitted axle loads or gross weight limit can affect the vehicle's handling characteristics, and increase the risk of accidents, personal injuries or damage to the vehicle.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the child would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
– Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 204*.

CAUTION

Make sure that no hard objects chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and damage them.

Note

– Adjust the tyre pressure to match the vehicle loading - the correct pressures are specified on the sticker on the end face of the driver's door.
– Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the rear of the vehicle. Make sure that these ventilation slots are not obstructed.
– Suitable belts for securing loads to the fastening rings* are commercially available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fastening rings

Unsecured loads are a hazard to all vehicle occupants.



Fig. 180 Location of fastening rings in luggage compartment

▸ Use the fastening rings to secure items safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in Luggage compartment on page 201*.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can possess so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of this “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

For example: an object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

– To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate tensioning straps which are properly secured to the fastening rings.
– Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.

Pedestrian protection system

Description

Applies to vehicles: with pedestrian protection system

The pedestrian protection system will automatically be activated when the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian. The bonnet is raised several centimetres to create an additional crush zone above the engine.

The sensors of the pedestrian protection system are located in the front bumper. In rare cases, the system can be triggered because the possibility that a pedestrian has been hit cannot be ruled out by the sensors, for example:

– in a collision with a street post,
– in a collision with an animal, or
– if you drive into a pile of snow, or
– in the event of ground contact, e.g. when driving on extremely poor road surfaces.

If the system has been activated, press the bonnet back into its original position ⇨ ⚠ *in Servicing the pedestrian protection system on page 203* and have the system serviced by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

– Never change or replace the bumper or bonnet as a part of tuning measures. This can impair the effectiveness of the pedestrian protection system and invalidate the operating permit for your vehicle. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs as a result of failure to comply with these stipulations, and such damage is not covered under warranty.
– False activation of the pedestrian protection system is possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Servicing the pedestrian protection system

Applies to vehicles: with pedestrian protection system



Fig. 181 Bonnet: Pedestrian protection system triggered

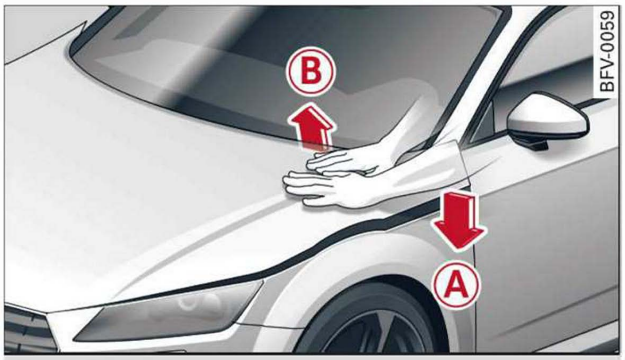


Fig. 182 Pressing back/checking the bonnet

When the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, the bonnet is raised by several centimetres ⇨ *Fig. 181*. In addition, the following message will appear: **Safety system: fault. See owner's manual**.

- To engage the bonnet again, press it down with both hands on the left side of the vehicle in area Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 182* ⇨ ⚠.
- To check whether the bonnet is properly engaged, pull the rear edge of the bonnet Ⓑ upwards. If the bonnet can be lifted, press it down again.
- When the bonnet has engaged properly, repeat the procedure on the right side of the vehicle.
- Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the pedestrian protection system serviced ⇨ ⚠.

In the event of a fault in the system, the following message will appear: **Safety system: fault. See owner's manual**.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not press back the bonnet unless both of your hands are flat on top of the bonnet. If you do this, you cannot catch your fingers between the bonnet and body. Take care when pressing back the bonnet: careless or uncontrolled movements can cause injury to yourself or others - risk of injury!
- The system can only be activated once. If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, have it replaced without delay by a qualified workshop.
- All repairs to the bumper and the pedestrian protection system must only be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. Improper repairs can impair the effectiveness of the system and invalidate the operating permit for your vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when individual components of the system or the entire vehicle are scrapped. Your authorised dealer is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat belts

Why is it so important to use seat belts?

Seat belts provide effective protection

The common belief that passengers can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision is false.



Fig. 183 Driver with properly positioned seat belt – good protection if the brakes are applied suddenly

It is an established fact that seat belts provide good protection in accidents. Therefore wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the best position for maximum protection ⇨ *Fig. 183*. The seat belts are capable of absorbing much of the kinetic energy arising in a collision. Also they help to prevent uncontrolled movements which could lead to severe injuries ⇨ *page 204, Important safety notes when using seat belts*.

If they wear the seat belts correctly, the passengers benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy gradually. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy generated in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the forces acting on the occupants and consequently the risk of injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, the physical principles involved are the same in other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to put on the seat belts before every trip - even when "just driving around the corner". Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well ⇨ ⚠.

Properly worn seat belts have been shown to be an effective means of reducing the potential for injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident ⇨ *page 205, Forces acting in a collision*.

For information on how children can travel safely in the car refer to ⇨ *page 195, Child seats*.

⚠ WARNING

– Seat belts must be put on before every trip - even when driving in town. This also applies to the rear passengers – risk of injury!
– During pregnancy, women should always ensure they wear a seat belt. The best way to protect the unborn child is to protect the mother ⇨ *page 207, Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy*.

Important safety notes when using seat belts

There are a number of safety points concerning the seat belts which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

– The seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the seats are adjusted properly ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.
– To ensure proper protection, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇨ *page 206, How to wear seat belts properly*. Ensure that the seat belts are worn exactly as recommended in this chapter. Belts which are not worn properly can increase the risk of injury in accidents considerably.
– Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
– Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt. It is especially dangerous to place a seat belt over a child sitting on your lap.

▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
– Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
– The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly ⇨ *tab. Cleaning the interior on page 238*.
– The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging properly.
– The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat, otherwise the belt will not be fully effective.
– Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
– The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
– Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. The belt anchorages should also be checked.

Forces acting in a collision

The physical principles involved in a frontal impact

Very large forces are generated during a collision; these forces have to be absorbed.

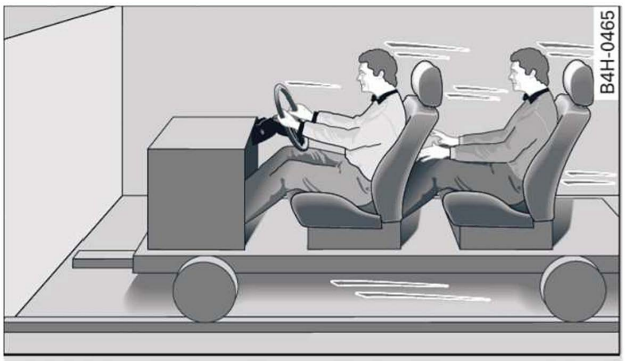


Fig. 184 Passengers of a vehicle which is headed for a brick wall. They are not using seat belts.

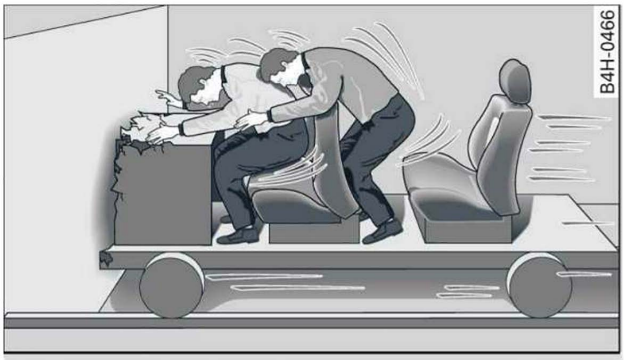


Fig. 185 The vehicle crashes against the wall

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple:

Both the moving vehicle and the passengers possess energy, which is known as “kinetic energy” ⇨ *Fig. 184*. The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be absorbed in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h, for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four. Because these passengers are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇨ *Fig. 185*. This would result in serious or potentially fatal injury. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Even at urban speeds of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces acting on the occupants in a collision can reach the equivalent of 1 ton (1000 kg) or more. At greater speed these forces are even higher. Again: if the speed doubles, the forces increase by a factor of four.

Passengers who do not wear seat belts are not "attached" to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their car was travelling just before the impact.

What happens to passengers not wearing seat belts?

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk fatal injuries in the event of an accident.



Fig. 186 A driver not wearing a seat belt can be thrown forwards



Fig. 187 A rear passenger not wearing a seat belt can be thrown forwards

In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers will be thrown forwards and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, etc ⇨ *Fig. 186*. Passengers not wearing their belts risk being thrown out of the car. This could result in potentially fatal injuries.

The common belief that occupants can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision is false. Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to hold yourself in the seat.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown forwards violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants ⇨ *Fig. 187*.

How to wear seat belts properly

Putting on the seat belts

Always fasten your seat belts before driving off.



Fig. 188 Driver's seat: Seat belt

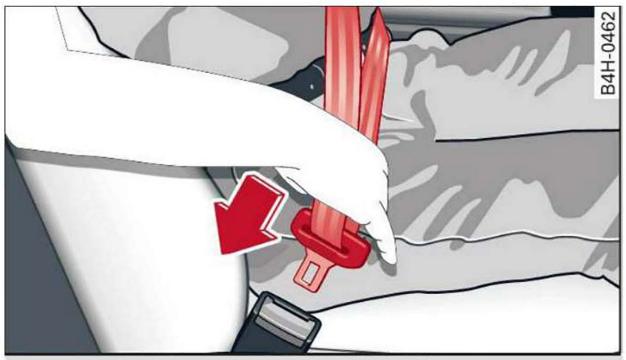


Fig. 189 Driver's seat: Belt buckle and latch plate

- ▸ Adjust the front seat correctly before putting on the seat belt ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the belt above the latch plate and pull it evenly across your chest and lap ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *Fig. 189*.
- ▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The three-point inertia reel belts are tensioned automatically. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or in a sharp curve.

WARNING

– Always make certain that the belt is positioned properly ⇨ *Fig. 188* - risk of injury ⇨ *page 207, Adjusting the seat belts*.
– The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat. Otherwise the belt will not be fully effective and the danger of injury increases.

Adjusting the seat belts

Always position seat belts properly for maximum safety.

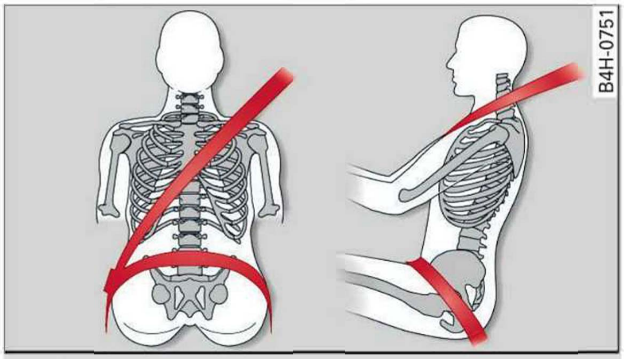


Fig. 190 Adjusting shoulder/lap belt

The following equipment is available for your vehicle to help you position the seat belt properly to suit your height:

– Seat height adjustment (front seats)

WARNING

– The shoulder section of the belt should be fitted across the centre of the collar bone close to the body. To fasten the belt, take hold of the belt above the latch plate and pull it slowly down across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the lower abdomen. The belt should always be worn tightly ⇨ *Fig. 190*. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.
– Always make sure that belt is positioned properly. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
– Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.

Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy

To afford the best protection for the unborn child it is important for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times.



Fig. 191 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Women should always ensure they adjust the seat belt correctly during pregnancy.

▸ Adjust the front seat correctly before putting on the seat belt ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.
▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly down across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 191*, ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *page 206, Fig. 189*.
▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

During pregnancy, women should especially make sure to wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach.

Taking off the seat belts

The red button releases the belt from the buckle.

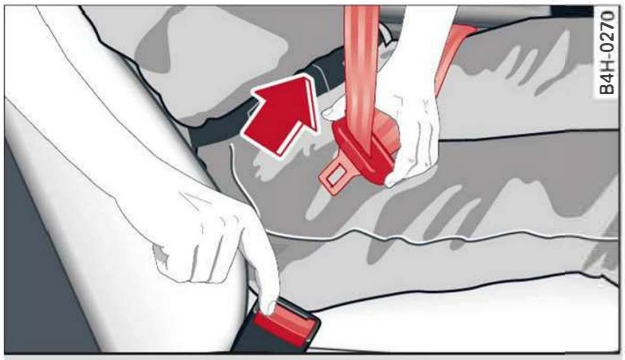


Fig. 192 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

- ▸ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨ *Fig. 192*. The latch plate will spring out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up by the retractor.

Belt tensioners

How the belt tensioners work

The seat belts for the driver and front passenger are equipped with belt tensioners.

The seat belts on the front seats are tensioned automatically in frontal, side and rear-end impacts above a certain degree of severity. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

In a less severe accident, or in the event of a rollover, the belt tensioners are not activated.

WARNING

– Any work on the tensioner system or removal and installation of system components for other repairs must be performed by a qualified workshop.

– The belt tensioners can only be activated once. If they have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced.

Note

– Some smoke may be released when the belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Your authorised dealer is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag system

Description of airbag system

General notes on airbag system

The airbag is an integral part of the car's passive safety system.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

In a side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact ⇨ ⚠.

In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection.

The airbag system will only work with the ignition on. The airbag system is monitored electronically; the airbag warning lamp indicates whether the system is functioning properly.

The main parts of the airbag system are:

– The electronic monitoring system (control unit and sensors)
– The two front airbags
– The two side airbags
– The warning lamp in the instrument cluster

There is a fault in the airbag system if the warning lamp

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
– does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
– goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on.
– comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

WARNING

– The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts; they are an integral part of the car's overall passive safety system. The airbags can only offer effective protection if the occupants are wearing their seat belts. For this reason it is very important to wear the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 204, Why is it so important to use seat belts?*.
– The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇨ *page 46, Seats and storage*.
– If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the airbag system be triggered in an accident.
– Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. If repairs to other vehicle components make it necessary to perform work on the airbag system or to remove or install parts of the airbag system, this may cause damage to the airbag system. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation. For this reason, you should always have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the system may fail to trigger in an accident.
– Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
– Never make any alterations to the front bumper or the body.
– Do not remove the front seats.
– The airbag system can only be activated once; if the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced. Should the airbag system or airbag modules have to be replaced, the qualified workshop carrying out the replacement will document all details.
– If you sell the vehicle, remember to pass on the complete Service Wallet to the new owner. If any of the airbags have been deactivated, it is important that the new owner is also given the relevant documents.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag or belt tensioner systems are scrapped.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– For safety reasons, the alternator and the starter are both disconnected from the battery via a pyrotechnic circuit breaker in severe accidents.
  – Any repairs to the pyrotechnic circuit breaker must always be performed by a qualified workshop – risk of accident!
  – The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or the circuit breaker are scrapped.

When are the airbags triggered?

One or more airbag systems are triggered in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances.

The airbag system is not triggered in minor collisions, or in rear collisions, or if the car overturns. In these situations, the occupants are protected by wearing the seat belts.

Factors determining the triggering response

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

Note

The airbag releases a fine dust when it inflates. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Front airbags

Important notes on front passenger's airbag



Fig. 193 Front passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

A sticker[1)] with important information about the front passenger's airbag is provided on the front passenger's sun visor. Please refer to the safety notes in the following chapters:

– Child seats and front passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 195, Safety notes for using child seats*
– Safe distance from front passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 213, Important safety notes on the front airbag system*
– Objects between front passenger and front passenger's airbag ⇨ *page 213, Important safety notes on the front airbag system*

1) Not available in all export vehicles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to vehicles: with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag

If an airbag has been deactivated, it should be reactivated as soon as possible so that it can continue to give the required protection.

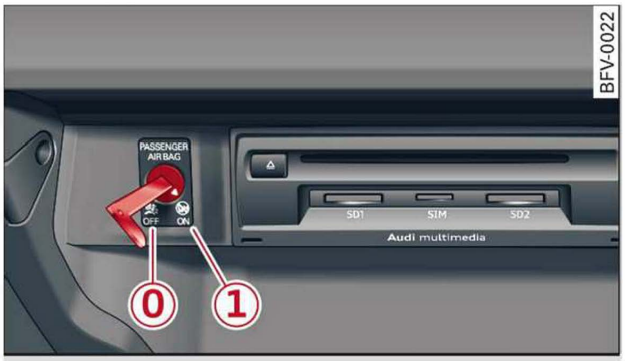


Fig. 194 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 195 Headliner: Warning lamp lights up when passenger's airbag is deactivated

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, use the key to turn the key-operated switch to (0) (OFF) ⇨ *Fig. 194*.
- The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the key to position (1) (ON).

Deactivating front passenger's airbag when a child seat is in use

If you have no alternative but to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat you must deactivate the front passenger's airbag beforehand.

Monitoring of airbag system

The indicator lamp ⇨ *page 14* will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on.

If the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated, the indicator lamp “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF” or “AIR BAG OFF” will light up constantly as a reminder ⇨ *Fig. 195*.

When the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the seat belt warning lamp for the front passenger ⇨ *page 13* is also switched off.

WARNING

- If you have no alternative but to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand. Potentially fatal injuries to the child can result if the front passenger's airbag is not deactivated ⇨ *page 195*!
- If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child seat is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

Note

All the other airbags in the car will remain functional if the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated with the key-operated switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.



Fig. 196 Driver's airbag in steering wheel

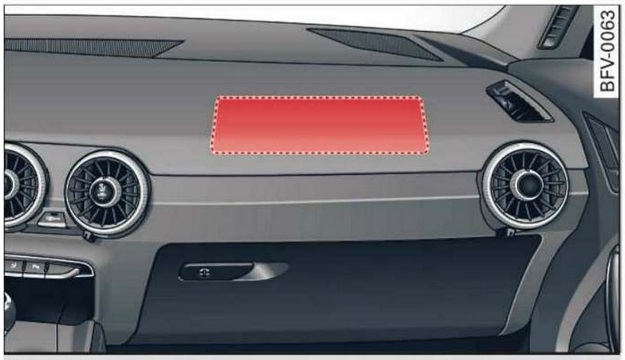


Fig. 197 Front passenger's airbag in dashboard

The front airbag for the driver is located in the padded hub of the steering wheel ⇨ *Fig. 196*. The front airbag for the front passenger is in the dashboard above the glove box ⇨ *Fig. 197*. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbags give additional head and chest protection for the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety notes on the front airbag system on page 213*.

How the front airbags work

When fully inflated, the airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.

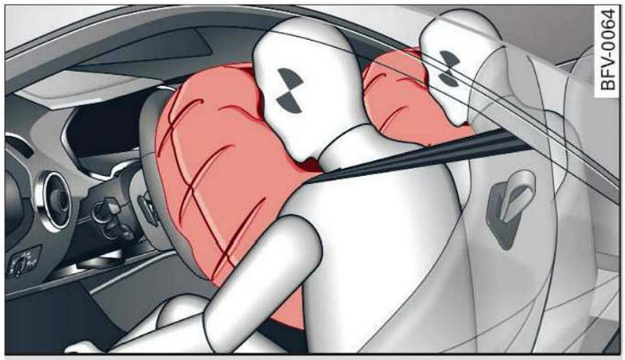


Fig. 198 Front airbags in inflated condition

The driver's and front passenger's airbag are triggered in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *Fig. 198*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and open out in front of the driver and front passenger ⇨ *Fig. 198*. In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). The fully deployed airbags cushion the forwards movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

Special openings in the airbag allow the gas to escape at a controlled rate to restrain the forward movement of the occupant's head and torso. Once the impact has been absorbed, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important safety notes on the front airbag system

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

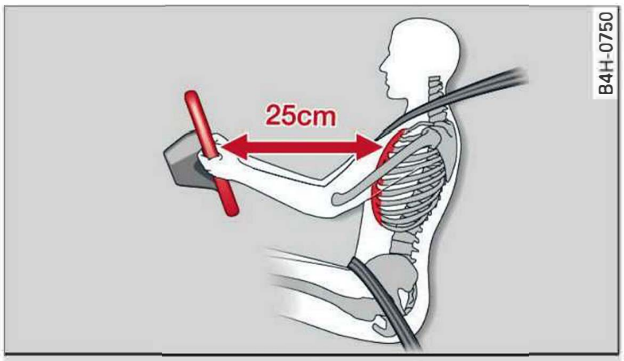


Fig. 199 Minimum distance from steering wheel

WARNING

- It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard ⇨ *Fig. 199*. The airbag system will not be able to give the required protection if you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard. There is also a risk of injury if the airbags are inflated. Additionally, the front seat position should always be adjusted to the body size of the occupant.
- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury. Should the airbag system be triggered in an accident there is an even greater risk of injury.
- Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries ⇨ *page 195, Child seats*.
- Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the front passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.
  - Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat.
  - Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇨ *page 211*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- Occupants sitting in the front of the car must never carry any objects or pets in the space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger's side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth (or with a cloth moistened with plain water). It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel or removal of seats) must be performed by a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

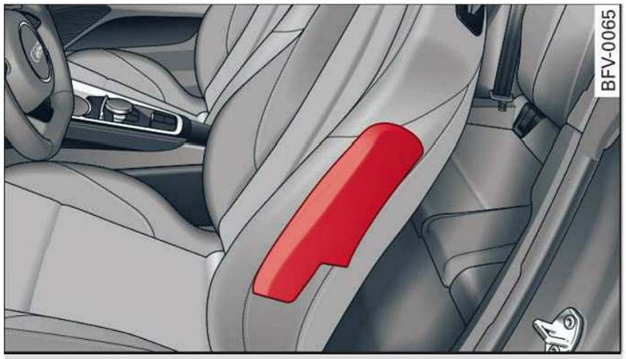


Fig. 200 Location of side airbag in driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the backrest padding of the front seats ⇨ *Fig. 200*. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG".

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbags give the occupants additional protection for the whole upper part of the body (i.e. the chest, stomach and pelvis) in the event of a severe side collision ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety notes on the side airbag system on page 214.*

In a side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact.

How the side airbags work

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

When fully inflated, the side airbags reduce the risk of injuries to the upper part of the body.



Fig. 201 Side airbag in inflated condition

In certain types of side collision, the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 201*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). The airbag releases a fine dust when it inflates. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

When fully deployed, the airbags cushion the impact for the occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the whole upper part of the body (i.e. the chest, stomach and pelvis) on the side facing the door.

Important safety notes on the side airbag system

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the side airbags be triggered in an accident.
- If children are not seated correctly, they are at greater risk of injury in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This could result in serious or potentially fatal injury ⇨ *page 195, Child seats*.
- It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The sensors for the airbags are located in the front doors. You must therefore not make any modifications to the doors or door ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

trim (e.g. retrofitting loudspeakers), as this could impair the function of the side airbags. Any damage to the front doors could lead to faults in the system. Repairs or any other work on the front doors must therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

– Do not apply excessive force to the sides of the backrests (such as hard knocks or kicks), as this could damage parts of the system. The side airbags could then fail to operate when required.
– If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag when it inflates out of the backrest, and seriously reduce the airbag's effectiveness.
– Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
– Any work involving the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the seats) must always be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may fail to work properly.

Head-protection airbags

Description of head-protection airbags

Applies to vehicles: with head-protection airbags

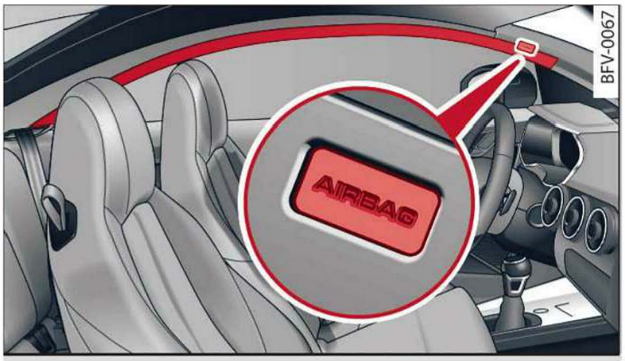


Fig. 202 Location of head-protection airbag above the door

The head-protection airbags are located above the doors on the left and right sides of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 202*. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts and side airbags, the head-protection airbags give the occupants additional protection against head and neck injuries in a severe side collision ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety notes on the head-protection airbags on page 216*.

Together with other design features (including cross-braces in the seats and the overall strength of the body structure), the head-protection and side airbag system offers an effective further improvement to occupant protection in side impacts.

How the head-protection airbags work

Applies to vehicles: with head-protection airbags

When fully inflated, the airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.



Fig. 203 Head-protection airbag in inflated condition

In certain types of side collision, the head-protection airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 203*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbag fills with a propellant gas and covers the entire area in front of the side windows, including the door pillars. In this way the system is able to protect both the front and the rear occupants on the side of the vehicle where the impact occurs. The head-protection airbag inflates to soften the impact if ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

an occupant strikes parts of the interior or objects outside the vehicle with their head. By reducing the head impact and restraining uncontrolled movement of the head, the airbag also reduces the forces acting on the neck.

The front airbags, side airbags and head-protection airbags may be triggered together in certain types of accident.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). The airbag releases a fine dust when it inflates. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety notes on the head-protection airbags

Applies to vehicles: with head-protection airbags

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

WARNING

- It is important to ensure that the area around the openings for the head-protection airbags remains unobstructed at all times, so that the airbags can inflate properly if needed.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. When using the coat hooks, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The space between the passengers and the head-protection airbags must never be occupied by children, other passengers or pets. Passengers should never lean out or put a hand or arm out of the window while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not move the sun visors out to cover the side windows if there is anything attached to them (such as pens or a remote control for the garage door). These objects could cause injury if the head-protection airbag is triggered.
- The sensors for the airbags are located in the doors. You must therefore not make any modifications to the doors or door trim (e.g. retrofitting loudspeakers), as this could impair the function of the side airbags. Any damage to the doors could lead to faults in the system. Repairs or any other work on the doors must therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- If unsuitable accessories are installed near the head-protection airbag, the protection afforded by the airbag can be seriously impaired if the system is triggered. When the head-protection airbag opens, parts of these accessories could be thrown into the vehicle and injure passengers ⇨ *page 260*.
- Any work involving the head-protection airbags, or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the roof liner), must always be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may fail to work properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Petrol grade

Applies to vehicles: with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. The petrol must comply with the EN 228 or DIN 51626-1 standard and must be **sulphur-free**. You can fuel your vehicle with fuels containing a maximum of 10% ethanol (E10). The petrol grades have different **octane ratings** (RON).

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap:

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium or min. RON/ROZ 91 Normal

The use of premium petrol (95 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (RON 91) can be used with a slight loss of power.

Unleaded fuel only, min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 98 Super Plus or min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (RON 95) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E50 or E85). This will damage the fuel system.
- Just one tank of leaded fuel or fuel with metallic additives will permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

Note

- You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
- In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

Diesel fuel

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** to EN 590 is recommended. If that type of fuel is unavailable, **diesel** to EN 590 can be used. It must have a cetane number (CN) of at least 51. The cetane number indicates the ignition quality of the diesel fuel. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

CAUTION

– Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
– Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Obtain professional assistance.

Filling the tank

Procedure for filling the tank

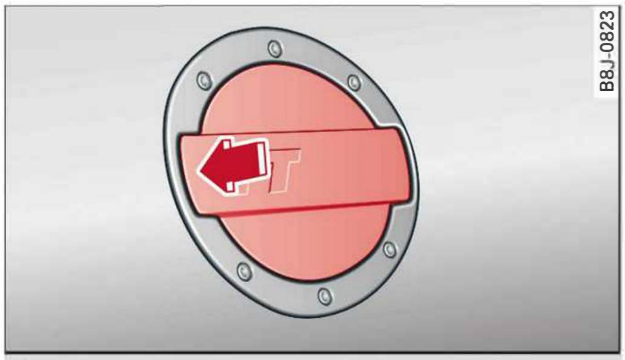


Fig. 204 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening the fuel tank flap

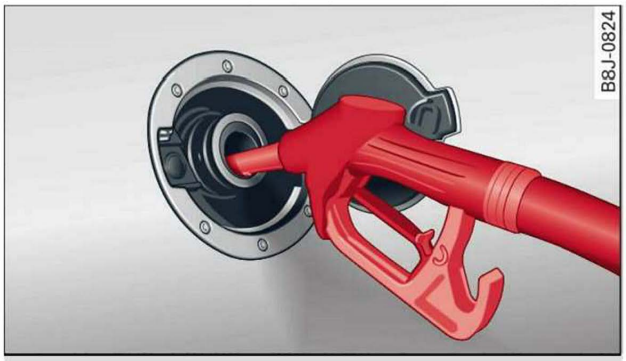


Fig. 205 Inserting the filler nozzle

The fuel tank flap is unlocked and locked automatically by the central locking system.

- Press the tank flap -arrow- ⇨ *Fig. 204* to open it. Your vehicle has a new self-sealing fuel tank without a tank cap.
- Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop ⇨ *Fig. 205* and ensure it is properly engaged.
- Start refuelling. When the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is “full”. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.
- When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇨ *page 217*.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇨ *page 258*.

WARNING

Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
– For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could become damaged in an accident and leak.
– Observe all relevant statutory regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.
– When filling your tank or a spare fuel canister with fuel, do not smoke and keep away from naked flames – risk of explosion!
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  – Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel vapour to ignite – risk of explosion! Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
  – Insert the filler nozzle as far as possible into the spare fuel canister.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.
– Make sure you never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapour is explosive – danger to life!

CAUTION

– Remove any fuel spills from the paintwork immediately.
– Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
– When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry on a vehicle with a **diesel engine** the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank – this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.

Note

Should the fuel tank flap become frozen stuck during inclement weather, press the middle of the flap with the palm of the hand and try again.

Note

To prevent the tank from being filled with the incorrect type of fuel (petrol or diesel), only suitable filler nozzles can be inserted in the fuel filler on your vehicle.
– If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
– The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. If you need to fill the tank from a spare fuel canister, you must use the special funnel stowed in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 219, Fig. 206*.

Filling the tank using a spare fuel canister

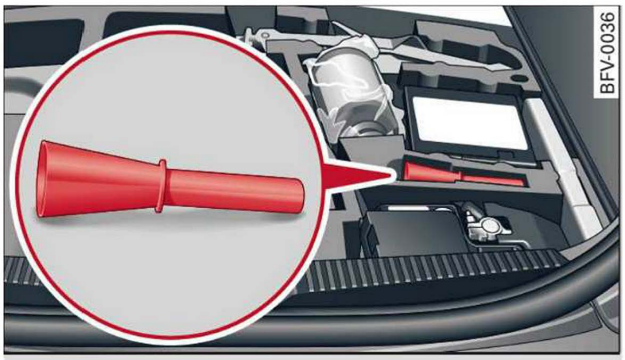


Fig. 206 Luggage compartment: Funnel

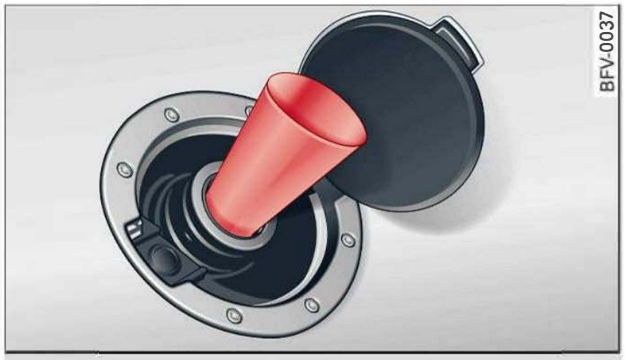


Fig. 207 Funnel inserted in tank opening

Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ ⚠ *in Procedure for filling the tank on page 218*.

▸ Press the tank flap -arrow- ⇨ *page 218, Fig. 204* to open it.
▸ Take the funnel out from underneath the floor panel in the luggage compartment.
▸ Insert the funnel into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop ⇨ *Fig. 207*. The funnel should be inserted so far into the fuel filler neck that the ring on the funnel is not visible.
▸ Insert the filler of the spare fuel canister into the funnel and start fuelling.
▸ After fuelling, remove the funnel and close the fuel tank flap so that it locks in place. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION

Remove any fuel spills from the paintwork immediately.

Releasing the tank flap manually

The tank flap can be released manually if the tank unlocking system should fail to operate.

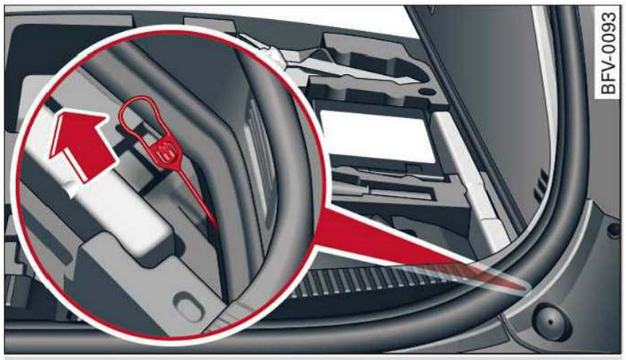


Fig. 208 Luggage compartment: Cover in the right side trim

- Open the boot lid.
- Lift the floor panel.
- Release the ring from its holder and carefully pull the ring ⇨ *Fig. 208*.

Emission control systems

Catalytic converter

Applies to vehicles with petrol engine: The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol; otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: The diesel particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. when the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter becomes obstructed with soot and the symbol for the diesel particulate filter lights up ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

- Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
- Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the emission control system (catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter), do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
- Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system - risk of fire!

Engine compartment

Working on components in the engine compartment

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Put the gear lever in neutral or selector in P.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Keep children away from engine compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator antifreeze).
– Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system, especially when working on the battery.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
– Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
– Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick rag to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
– Never remove the engine cover panel - risk of burns!
– If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system.
– Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Never open the throttle inadvertently (for instance by hand from the engine compartment) if a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The vehicle could otherwise start moving immediately and possibly cause an accident.
– Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Always disconnect the battery.
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near naked flames.
  – Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.

CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in the workshop.

Note

On right-hand drive vehicles* some of the containers / reservoirs mentioned below are located on the other side of the engine compartment.

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 209 Footwell on driver's side: Release lever

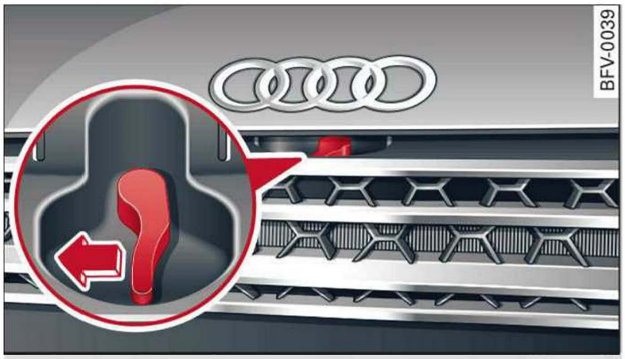


Fig. 210 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

▸ With the driver's door open, pull the lever under the dashboard in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇨ *Fig. 209*.
▸ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Press the release lever ⇨ *Fig. 210* in the direction indicated (arrow). This will release the arrester hooks.
- Open the bonnet.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down* ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the adjacent body panels.
– Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

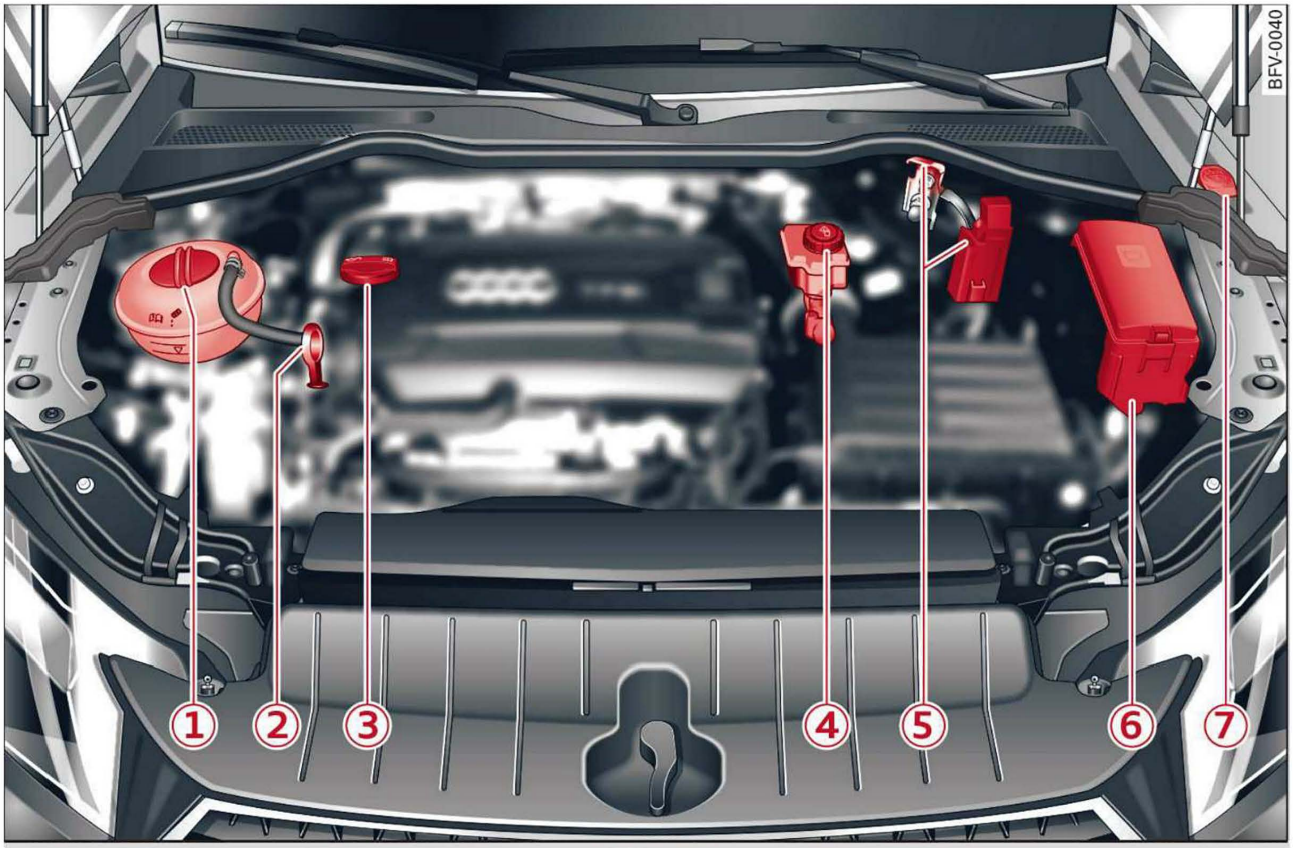


Fig. 211 Typical locations of fluid containers and engine oil filler cap

① Coolant expansion tank (🌡) 225
② Engine oil dipstick 223
③ Engine oil filler cap (🛢) 224
④ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) 226
⑤ Jump-start terminals: under a cover (+); earth point on body (-) 249
⑥ Fuse box 254
⑦ Windscreen washer container (🚗) . 229 ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The positions of the engine oil dipstick and engine oil filler cap ⇨ *Fig. 211* (items ② and ③) may be different on some engine versions.

Engine oil

Choosing the correct engine oil grade

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

If you have to top up the oil between oil changes, use the grades of oil specified in the table in accordance with VW standards. You will need to know whether

– the vehicle is being serviced based on the flexible or fixed oil change service (see last service record in Service Schedule).

– the vehicle has a petrol or diesel engine (see sticker on inside of fuel tank flap).

– a diesel particulate filter is fitted on the vehicle (see Delivery Inspection section of Service Schedule).

	Oil Change Service (flexible)	Oil Change Service (fixed)
Petrol engine	**VW 504 00**	**VW 502 00** Alternatively: VW 504 00[a)]
Diesel engine	**VW 507 00**	With diesel particulate filter: **VW 507 00** Without diesel particulate filter: **VW 505 01** Alternatively: VW 507 00[b)]

a) When using fuel complying with EN 228 or DIN 51626-1

b) When using fuel complying with EN 590 or DIN 51628

Note

If the oil grades specified in the table are not available, you can use one of the following grades as a substitute. To prevent damage to the engine, this should not be done more than once between oil changes and no more than 0.5 litres should be used.

– Petrol engines: ACEA A3 or API SN (API SM) standard

– Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4 standard

Note

– For **China**: Only oil complying with VW standard **502 00** with viscosity **SAE 5W-40** may be used on vehicles with a petrol engine.

– The flexible oil change service is not available in all countries.

Checking the engine oil level

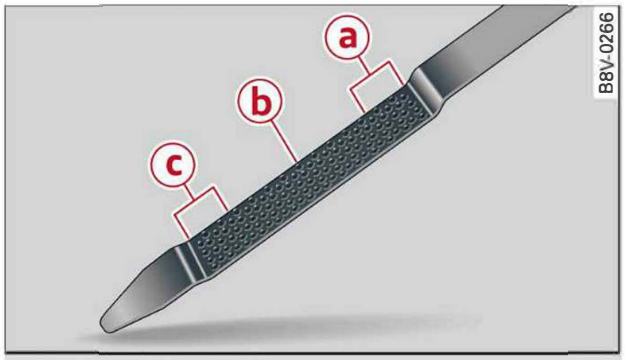


Fig. 212 Guide for oil dipstick

Checking oil level

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Allow the warm engine to run briefly at idling speed and then switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Wait approx. two minutes.
- ▸ Pull out the dipstick. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- ▸ Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇨ *Fig. 212*. If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇨ *page 224*.

Oil level in area (a)

- ▸ Do *not* top up oil.

Oil level in area (b)

- ▸ Oil *can* be topped up. *After topping up* the oil level should be in area (a). ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Oil level in area (c)

▸ Oil *must* be topped up. *After topping up* the oil level should be in area (a).

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

Topping up the engine oil



Fig. 213 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

▸ Switch off the engine.
▸ Unscrew cap from oil filler opening ⇨ *Fig. 213*, ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 211*.
▸ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable oil ⇨ *page 223*.
▸ After two minutes check the oil level once again ⇨ *page 223, Checking the engine oil level.*
▸ If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil.
▸ Replace the oil filler cap carefully and push the dipstick all the way in.

WARNING

– Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
– Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

CAUTION

– The oil level must never be above area (a), as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. Contact a qualified workshop to extract the engine oil if necessary.
– No additives should be used with engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
– Always observe statutory requirements when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored via a warning lamp on the infotainment display ⇨ *page 12*. However, we recommend that it should be checked occasionally.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. We recommend mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. Only use one of the following coolant additives. It is possible to mix these additives.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J
Only if the above grades are not available: G12+	TL 774 F

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Countries with warm climate	min. 40 %, max. 45 %	min. -25 °C
Countries with cold climate	min. 50 %, max. 60 %	max. -40 °C

CAUTION

– Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
– To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of anti-freeze additive if the approved type of additive is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
– Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
– Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.

Topping up coolant



Fig. 214 Engine compartment: Cap of coolant expansion tank

Checking coolant level

- Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Read off the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 211*. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.

Topping up coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇨ (!).

- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a cloth, and carefully unscrew the cap anti-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 224* up to the top mark.
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on again tightly.

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the cooling system checked. If there are no leaks in the system, a loss of coolant can only occur if the coolant boils and is forced out of the system as a result of overheating.

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure. Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot: you could be scalded by escaping steam.
– The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system - risk of engine damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake fluid



Fig. 215 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 211*.

If the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the MIN mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. Obtain professional assistance. The brake fluid level is also monitored via a warning lamp on the infotainment display ⇨ *page 11*.

In right-hand drive vehicles the brake fluid reservoir is on the other side of the engine compartment.

Changing brake fluid

Your vehicle's Service Schedule will tell you the regular intervals at which the brake fluid is due for renewal. We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by a qualified workshop during a service.

WARNING

- Brake fluid is poisonous; it must be stored in the sealed original container in a safe place out of the reach of children.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Battery

General notes

All work on batteries requires specialist knowledge.

The battery is virtually **maintenance-free**. It is checked as part of the Inspection Service.

When an airbag is triggered, the battery will, under certain circumstances, be disconnected from the on-board power supply for safety reasons ⇨ ⚠ *in General notes on airbag system on page 209*.

Disconnecting the battery

The battery should always be left connected. If the battery is disconnected, some of the vehicle's functions will become inoperative (e.g. electric windows). These functions will require resetting after the battery is reconnected. For this reason, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system when absolutely necessary.

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period ⇨ *page 106*. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine. Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for several months, this can result in total battery discharge. If the battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

destroys the battery. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 228*. Do not disconnect the battery; otherwise the anti-theft alarm system* will be out of operation.

Winter conditions

The battery is drained more in cold weather, which means that the starting power is reduced. For this reason, have the battery checked and charged if necessary before the start of winter.

WARNING

– All work on batteries requires specialist knowledge. For queries regarding the vehicle battery please seek the assistance of a qualified workshop – risk of chemical burns / risk of explosion!
– The battery must not be opened. Do not attempt to make any changes to the electrolyte level of the battery. Otherwise, there is a risk that a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen gas can accumulate and cause an explosion.

Important safety warnings for handling a car battery

All work on batteries requires specialist knowledge.

The vehicle battery is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

	Wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and safety glasses.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is under charge!
	Keep children away from the battery and battery acid.

WARNING

Always be aware of the danger of injury and chemical burns as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system.

– Wear safety glasses. Do not allow acid or lead particles to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing.
– Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and safety glasses. Do not tilt the battery - acid can leak out of the vapour vent. If electrolyte should splash into the eyes rinse at once for several minutes using clear water. Then seek medical care immediately. Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with soap solution, and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.
– Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from battery. Avoid sparks (including those from static charges) when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never cross the battery poles. The resulting high-energy sparks can cause injury.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge battery in a well ventilated area.
– Keep children away from the battery and battery acid.
– Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition before starting any work on the vehicle's electrical system. The minus cable of the battery must be disconnected. When changing a light bulb, it is sufficient to only turn off the light.
– Before disconnecting the battery, turn off the anti-theft alarm system*! Otherwise the alarm will be triggered.
– When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle's electrical system, first disconnect the minus cable and then the plus cable.
– Before reconnecting the battery, turn off all electrical equipment. First connect the plus cable, then the minus cable. The battery cables must NOT be connected to the wrong battery poles – this can cause an electrical fire.
– Never charge a frozen or thawed out battery - risk of explosion and chemical burns! A battery must be replaced once it has frozen. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C.
– Make sure that the vapour hose is always attached to the battery.
– Never use a damaged battery - risk of explosion! Replace a damaged battery immediately.

CAUTION

– Never disconnect the car's battery with the engine running or with the ignition turned on, otherwise the electrical system or electrical components will be damaged.
– Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can affect the battery housing.
– If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from frost. The battery will be destroyed if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 228*.
– When the doors are opened the windows are automatically lowered by approximately 10 mm. This function is not available if the battery is disconnected, and the door seal and window may be damaged as a result.

Charging the battery

Terminals for charging the battery are fitted in the engine compartment.



Fig. 216 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger

▸ Note the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Important safety warnings for handling a car battery on page 227* and ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 221*.
▸ Open the red cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 216*.
▸ Connect the charger cables as specified to the **jump-start terminals** (terminal with red cap = “positive”, terminal with hexagon = “negative”).
▸ Now connect the battery charger to the mains and switch on.
▸ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
▸ Now disconnect the charger cables.
▸ Refit the red cap onto the positive terminal.
▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 222*.

When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the battery acid to escape ⇨ ⚠.

Charging the battery

Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected). The battery must not be opened while you are charging it.

Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

WARNING

Always replace a frozen battery. Never recharge it - risk of explosion!

Note

Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.

Replacing the battery

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent power management system to control the distribution of electrical energy ⇨ *page 106*. The power management function ensures that the battery is charged much more efficiently than on vehicles without a power management system. For this additional power to be available after replacing ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the battery, we recommend that the replacement battery used is of the same make and type as the original-equipment battery. After changing the battery, the power management system must be initialised by a qualified workshop to ensure that the replacement battery is charged to an optimum level.

A replacement battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12 V) and current rating. It must also have the same dimensions as the original, factory-fitted battery and have sealed caps. The battery must comply with the standards TL 825 06 (dated April 2008 or later) and VW 7 50 73 (April 2010 or later).

Since the battery is difficult to access, we recommend having it replaced by an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

CAUTION

- Your vehicle is equipped with a special deep cycle battery (e.g. AGM type). The on-board electronic systems may develop problems if you fit a different type of battery. For this reason, if you need to replace the vehicle battery, make sure that the specifications of the new battery match the original exactly.
- Make sure that the vent hose is always attached to the original opening on the side of the battery. Gases or battery acid can otherwise escape and possibly cause damage.
- The battery holder and clamps must always be correctly secured.
- Before starting any work on the battery, always observe the warnings listed under ⇨ *page 227, Important safety warnings for handling a car battery*.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances including sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of appropriately and must not be put together with ordinary household waste. Make sure the battery removed from the vehicle cannot tip over. Otherwise, sulphuric acid could escape.

Windscreen washer



Fig. 217 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *Fig. 217*, ⇨ *page 222, Fig. 211*. Container capacity ⇨ *page 258*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water (with anti-freeze additive in winter).

CAUTION

- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.



Fig. 218 Instrument cluster display: Service interval display (example)

There are two service interval display levels: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– **Inspection or oil change reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear on the infotainment display each time the ignition is switched on/off ⇨ *Fig. 218*. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

You can look up the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection. Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**. You cannot check the service interval for the first 500 km or so after resetting the display or when your vehicle is new.

CAUTION

– Keeping to the correct service intervals is most important for the service life and residual value of the vehicle (and especially for the life of the engine). Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
– The time until the next oil change is not counted down if the battery is disconnected. If your vehicle is out of service for an extended period, please refer to the Service Schedule for details of the next service date.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels and tyres

Wheels

General notes

- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

CAUTION

– Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. We recommend that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar.

New wheels or tyres

It is best to have all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts and trained personnel.

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- We recommend the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠.

On vehicles with **four-wheel drive**, all four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as otherwise the driveline can be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel):

DOT ... 2214 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2014.

Audi Genuine Tyres

Audi Genuine Tyres with the marking “AO” or “RO” are specially matched to your Audi. When used properly, these tyres meet the highest standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

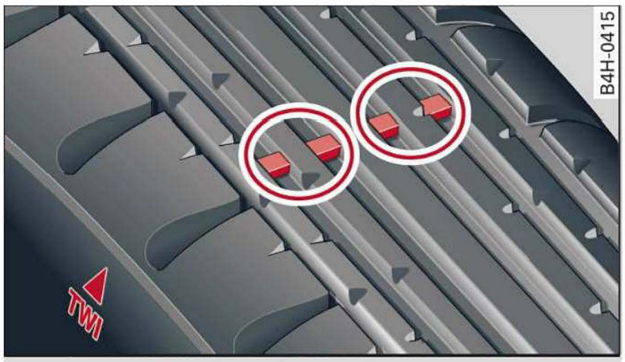


Fig. 219 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 219* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 247*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected. ▶

1) Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

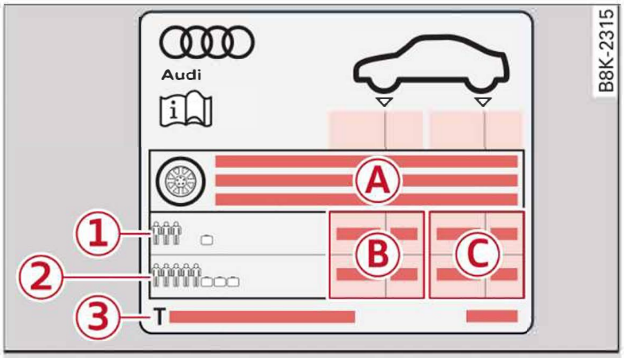


Fig. 220 End face of driver's door: Sticker listing the tyre pressures

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the compact temporary spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 220* is on the end face of the driver's door.

Ⓐ Tyre size

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

③ Tyre pressure for the compact temporary spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum ② ⇨ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 220* for the correct tyre pressures according to the load the vehicle is carrying.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.
- Vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator*: Store the new tyre pressures on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 235*.
- Check the pressure of the spare wheel*/compact temporary spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

– Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Under-inflated tyres flex more and can overheat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.

Note

We recommend using the tyre pressure setting ① or ② for partial loads.

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 233*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

WARNING

– Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!
– Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ⛷ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only. This also applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive*.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
7Jx17	47 mm	225/50

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 13.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to vehicles: with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lamp (!) and a message on the infotainment display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 235*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 233, Fig. 220*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

– The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
– The tyre has suffered structural damage.
– The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 235*.
– You are driving with the temporary spare wheel*.

Indicator lamps

(!) - Loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠. Check and change or repair the tyre(s). Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 235*.

TPMS (**T**yre **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual** - If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp (!) in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 235*. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

– If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.
– Run-flat tyres* may only be used on vehicles which were originally equipped with this type of tyre.

Note

– If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
– When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.
– The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to tyres with the marking “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 231*. We recommend that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to vehicles: with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the infotainment system.

▸ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 232*.
▸ Switch on the ignition.
▸ Select the following on the infotainment system: MENU button > **Car** > left control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure loss indicator**.

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains. Otherwise, a system malfunction may occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General notes

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

For the sake of the environment

- Please choose care products that are not harmful to the environment.
- Surplus cleaning materials should not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, bonnet or boot lid, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material or sensors*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
– To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
– After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

CAUTION

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors and, if necessary, retract the automatic rear spoiler* to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
– Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
– Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
– Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  – Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  – Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  – Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	⇨ *page 43*
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Sensors	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Ornamental trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Remedy
Paintwork	Paint damage	Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint no. and touch up using a paint pen ⇨*page 257*
	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent[a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Interior: Same treatment as plastic parts Exterior: Same treatment as painted parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Ornamental trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush.
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a)]
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent[a)] (allow to dry before retracting)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Situation	Remedy
Fabrics, leatherette, Alcantara	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a)]
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent[a)], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a)]
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a)]
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

CAUTION

– **Headlights/rear lights**
  – Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
– **Wheels**
  – Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
  – If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
– **Windows**
  – Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
  – To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
– **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
  – Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
– **Paintwork**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
- Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
- Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– **Instrument cluster**

- Before cleaning, ensure that the instrument cluster is switched off and cool.
- The instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
- Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

– **Control consoles**

- Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

– **Seat belts**

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

– **Fabrics/leatherette/Alcantara**

- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/Alcantara fabrics.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

– **Natural leather**

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

Note

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Here you will receive advice on necessary measures, for example regarding corrosion protection, maintenance and storage. In addition, please observe the general notes on the battery ⇨ *page 226*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mobility

General notes

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location ⇨ *page 241*.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to vehicles: with warning triangle

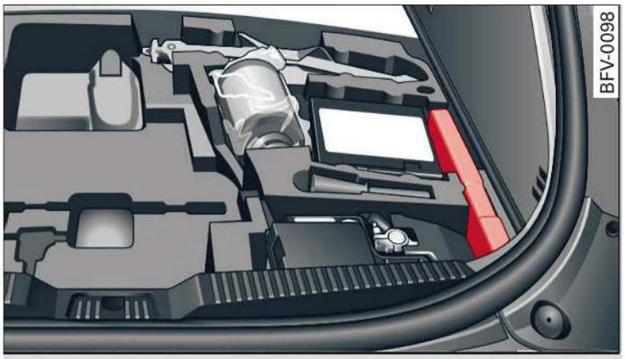


Fig. 221 Luggage compartment: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is stowed in the luggage compartment.

The luggage compartment is specifically designed to hold only the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

First-aid kit

Applies to vehicles: with first-aid kit

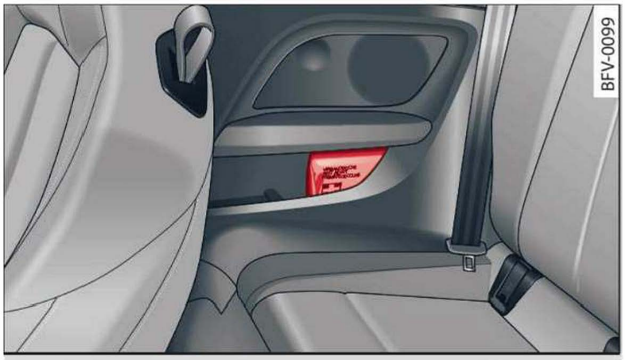


Fig. 222 Rear seats: Compartment for first-aid kit

The first-aid kit is located in a compartment next to the right side rear seat.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to vehicles: with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is located in the footwell on the front passenger's side (secured in a holder).

- Remove the fire extinguisher by pressing on the tab marked “PRESS”.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the securing belt.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements. Observe the expiry date of the fire extinguisher.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tool kit/tyre repair kit/compressor



Fig. 223 Luggage compartment: Floor panel (closed)

The tools, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Press the plastic handle and lift up the floor panel.
- ▸ Fold back the floor panel.

Before stowing the jack* again, wind down the arm of the jack as far as it will go.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to vehicles: with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 241*.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ▸ Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- ▸ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 242*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to vehicles: with tyre repair kit

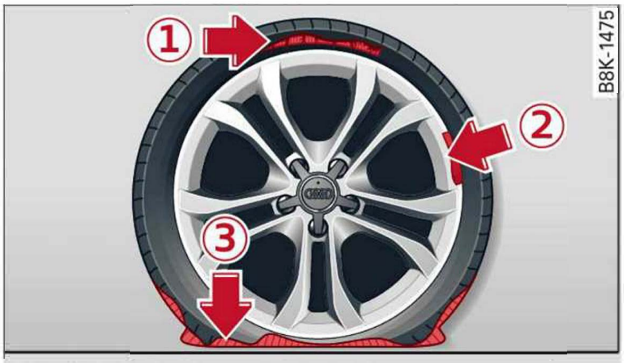


Fig. 224 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- – On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ① ⇨ *Fig. 224*
- – If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
- – if you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In these cases, you should seek professional assistance.

⚠ WARNING

- – Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- – Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- – If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- – Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- – If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Immediately contact a doctor.
- – Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- – If any allergic reactions should occur get medical help immediately.
- – Keep the sealant away from children.

Note

- – If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- – Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. Have the sealing compound exchanged by a qualified workshop. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Please observe the relevant regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to vehicles: with tyre repair kit

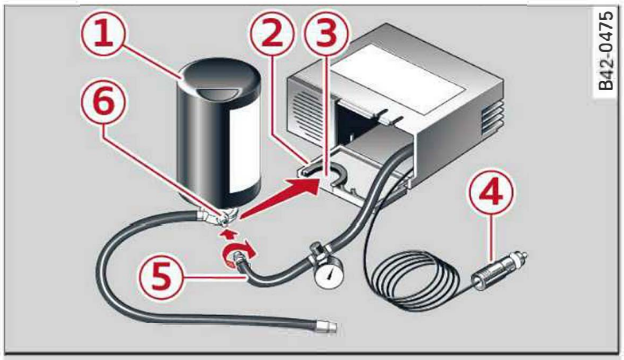


Fig. 225 Components of the tyre repair kit

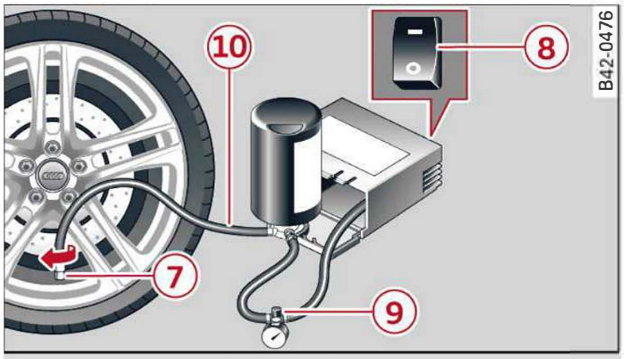


Fig. 226 Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 242*.

Setting up the tyre repair kit

- ▸ Open the flap (2) on the compressor ⇨ *Fig. 225*.
- ▸ Pull the connector (4) and the compressor hose (5) including the pressure gauge out of the housing.
- ▸ Screw the compressor hose (5) onto the flange (6) of the tyre sealant can (1).
- ▸ Place the tyre sealant can (flange facing down) into the opening (3) on the flap of the compressor.
- ▸ Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
- ▸ Screw the filler hose (10) onto the valve (7) ⇨ *Fig. 226*.
- ▸ Insert the connector (4) ⇨ *Fig. 225* into a socket in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition.

Inflating the tyre

- ▸ Move the switch (8) ⇨ *Fig. 226* on the compressor to position **I**.
- ▸ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▸ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the filler hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
– If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 6 minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
– Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 6 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to vehicles: with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is enclosed with the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ▸ After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ▸ If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:
– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
– Vehicle handling could be impaired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇨ *page 241*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- Take out the tools ⇨ *page 242* and spare wheel ⇨ *page 247*.

WARNING

If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the hubcap/wheel bolt caps

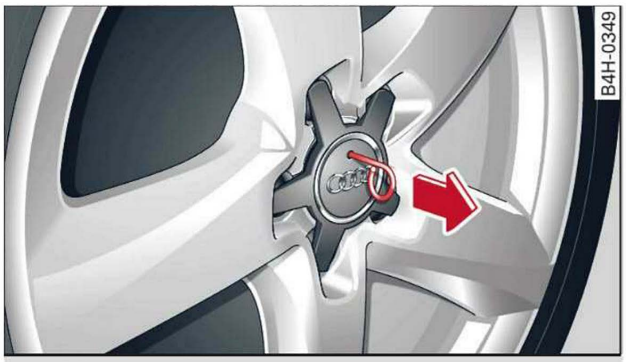


Fig. 227 Wheel: Hubcap



Fig. 228 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Hubcaps*

- Insert the hook (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) in the hole in the hubcap ⇨ *Fig. 227*.
- Pull off the hubcap.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps*

- Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 228*.
- Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

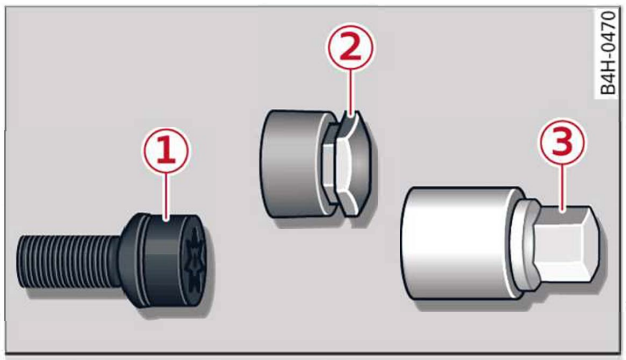


Fig. 229 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- Pull off the hubcap* or wheel bolt cap* (2) ⇨ *Fig. 229*.
- Slide the adapter (3) all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt (1).
- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter (3).
- Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 245*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 230 Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1].
- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise -arrow-. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

Raising the vehicle

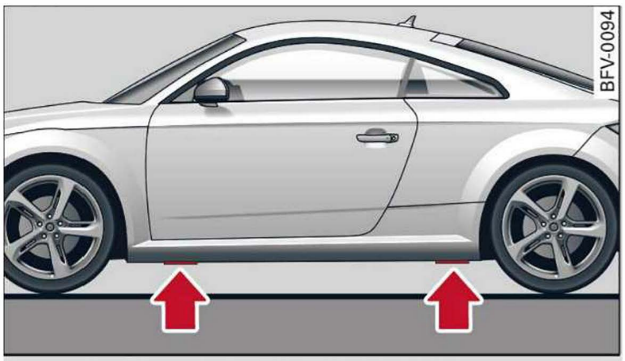


Fig. 231 Sills: markings (example)

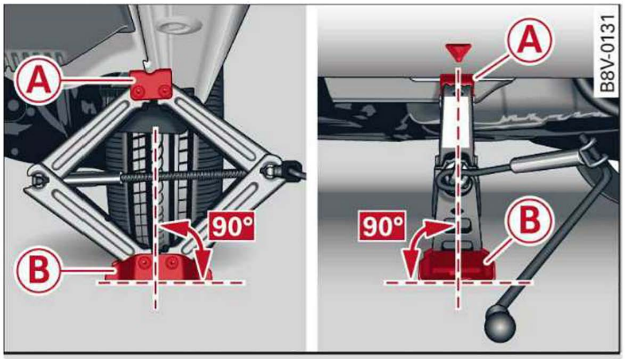


Fig. 232 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- Always provide a firm base for the jack* on the ground. (The jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.
- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 231*. The jacking point is located behind the marking under the door sill.
- Wind up the jack* under the jacking point until the claw Ⓐ ⇨ *Fig. 232* of the jack is directly below the jacking point.
- Align the jack* so that the claw Ⓐ grips the jacking point under the door sill and the movable base plate of the jack Ⓑ is flat on the ground. The base plate Ⓑ must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point Ⓐ.
- Raise the vehicle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground. ▶

[1] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇨ *page 244*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

– Make sure the jack* is stable. If the ground underneath the jack* is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in - risk of injury!
– Use only the jack* supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
– Apply the jack* only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack* can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
– The height of the parked vehicle can change as a result of variations in loading.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
– If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!

CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack* at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on the wheel

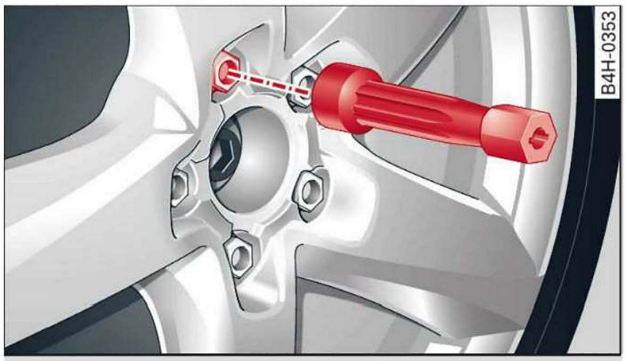


Fig. 233 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts

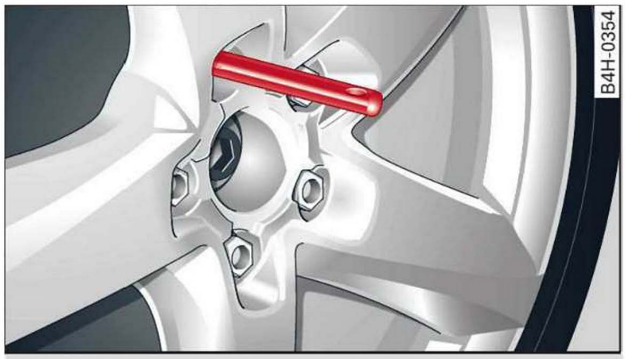


Fig. 234 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

Taking off the wheel

- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇨ *Fig. 233*.
- Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇨ *Fig. 234*.
- Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- Take off the wheel ⇨ (!). The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 247*.

- Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇨ (!).
- Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.

WARNING

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket - risk of accident!

CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

If you ever have a puncture and need to fit the spare wheel* in the wrong direction, please drive with extra care because the tyre will not give optimum performance in this situation. Bear this in mind particularly when driving on wet roads.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▸ Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▸ Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 201*.
- ▸ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Adjust the tyre pressures and store them via the infotainment system.
- ▸ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 120 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▸ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Spare wheel

General notes

Applies to vehicles: with compact temporary spare wheel



Fig. 235 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel



Fig. 236 Compact temporary spare wheel (example)

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. Have the damaged wheel checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

Removing the compact temporary spare wheel

- ▸ Turn the centre plastic knob ⇨ *Fig. 235* (1) anticlockwise.
- ▸ Take out the spare wheel.

Removing the jack

- ▸ Lift open the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment and take out the jack. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident. You can find the tyre pressures here ⇨ *page 233, Fig. 220*.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time – risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Jump-starting

Before starting the engine

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both batteries must be rated at 12 Volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads, as it could otherwise explode.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 220*.

Note

- There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected and the boosting battery could be discharged.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Switch off the car telephone if necessary. Details will be given in the manufacturer's instructions for the car telephone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the engine

The jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

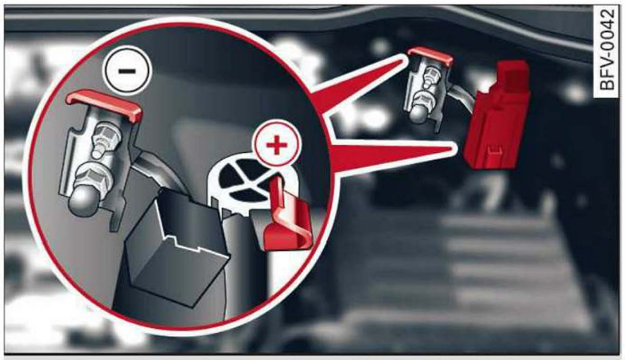


Fig. 237 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger

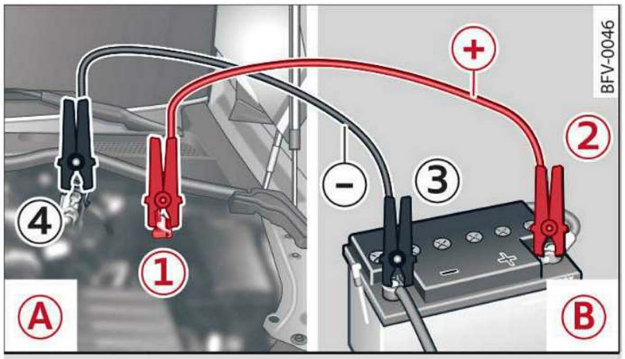


Fig. 238 Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: A – Discharged battery, B – Boosting battery

Please note that the described method of connecting the leads is meant for jump-starting your vehicle.

Preparations

1. Do not attempt to jump-start a vehicle with a battery which has been frozen. If a battery has frozen it must be replaced.
2. Apply the handbrake and move the gear lever to neutral (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to P (automatic gearbox).
3. Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition on both vehicles.

Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads

4. Before jump-starting the vehicle you must open the cap on the positive terminal.
5. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (1) ⇨ *Fig. 238* of the jump-start connection (A) in your vehicle.
6. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (2) of the boosting battery (B).
7. Connect one end of the black lead to the negative terminal (3) of the boosting battery (B).
8. Connect the other end of the black jump lead to the negative terminal (bolt head) (4) of the jump-start connection (A) in your vehicle.
9. Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

10. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
11. Start the engine of the car with the discharged battery and wait two or three minutes until the engine is running smoothly.
12. If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
13. Switch on the blower and the rear window heating on the vehicle which has been jump-started in order to offset excessive voltage which may occur when disconnecting the leads. The headlights must be switched off!
14. When the engines are running, disconnect the leads in exactly the opposite sequence to that described on ⇨ *page 249, Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads*. Make sure that the leads cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
15. Close the cap on the positive terminal.
16. Switch off the blower and the rear window heating again.

WARNING

– The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuiting.
– Do not lean over the batteries - risk of acid burns!
– The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

– Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
– If jump-starting another vehicle, position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

CAUTION

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle. If jump-starting another vehicle, you should not connect the negative lead (–) to the negative terminal of the discharged battery, but directly to the engine block or a solid metal part bolted to the engine block. If the battery of the other vehicle does not have a gas vent, there is a risk that a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen gas can accumulate and cause an explosion.

Note

– The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases entering the vehicle's interior.
– Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Tow-starting / towing away

General notes

Some experience is required to tow or tow-start a vehicle, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Notes on towing vehicles

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

– The vehicle must not be towed faster than **50 km/h**.
– The vehicle must not be towed further than **50 km**.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/drive combination:

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	Front axle

Four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

Notes on tow-starting

Automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇨ *page 248* before attempting to tow start. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇨ *page 251, Tow-starting*. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

There is a high risk of accidents when towing/tow-starting, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.

CAUTION

– If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
– Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

Note

– Automatic gearbox: It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the selector lever ⇨ *page 78*.
– Please observe the relevant regulations when towing or tow-starting.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 250*.

Preparations

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 252*, ⇨ *page 252*.
- Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise become unscrewed from the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 40*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- Engage the clutch very gently when starting to move (manual gearbox) and press the accelerator slowly.
- Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
- The brake servo only works when the engine is running. The power steering only works when the ignition is on and the vehicle is moving[1)]. Otherwise you will need to press the brake pedal significantly harder and apply more force to move the steering wheel.
- Please ensure that the steering wheel is unlocked and that it moves freely.
- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 66*.
- Manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

WARNING

If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle

Note

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard lights are on. The hazard lights will be interrupted temporarily.

Tow-starting

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 250*.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres ⇨ ⓘ. ▶

1) Important: The battery must be adequately charged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 252*, ⇨ *page 252*.
- ▸ Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- ▸ Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- ▸ As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.

CAUTION

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Front towline anchorage

The front towline anchorage is only mounted if the vehicle has to be towed.



Fig. 239 Front bumper: Cover cap



Fig. 240 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located behind a cover cap on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 242*.
- ▸ To detach the cover cap from the bumper press the *top left* part of the cap inwards ⇨ *Fig. 239*.
- ▸ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ⇨ *Fig. 240* and tighten it with the box spanner.
- ▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

Rear towline anchorage

The rear towline anchorage should only be mounted if you wish to tow another vehicle.



Fig. 241 Rear bumper: Cover cap



Fig. 242 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage*

There is a screw connection for the towline anchorage on the right of the rear bumper.

- ▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇨ *page 242*.
- ▸ To remove the cover cap from the bumper, press it in at the *top* -arrow- and pull it out at the *bottom* ⇨ *Fig. 241*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ▸ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ⇨ *Fig. 242* and tighten it with the box spanner.
- ▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing - risk of accident!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Fuses in vehicle interior



Fig. 243 Area near steering column on LHD vehicle: Cover

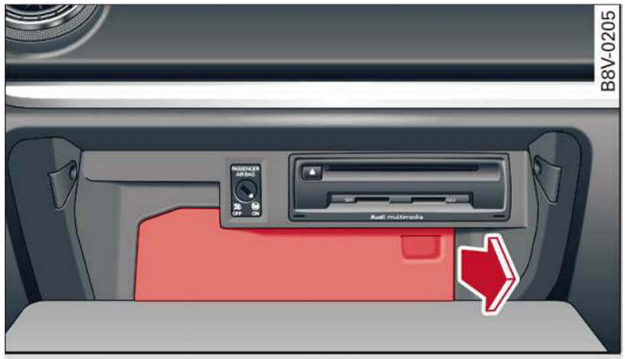


Fig. 244 Open glove box on RHD vehicle: Cover

Access to the fuses is different on left-hand and right-hand drive vehicles.

– LHD vehicles: The fuses are located behind a cover near the steering column ⇨ *Fig. 243*.
– RHD vehicles: The fuses are located behind a cover in the glove box ⇨ *Fig. 244*.

Changing fuses

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

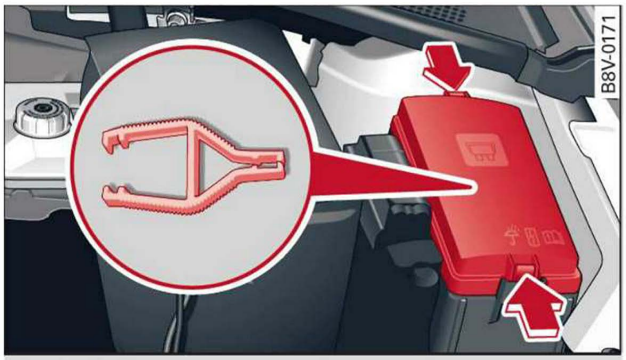


Fig. 245 Engine compartment, left-hand side: Fuse cover

The various electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located behind a cover below the steering wheel and on the left side of the engine compartment.

Fuses in vehicle interior

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component ⇨ *page 255*.
- Remove the cover: LHD vehicles ⇨ *page 254, Fig. 243* or RHD vehicles ⇨ *page 254, Fig. 244*.
- Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *Fig. 245*.
- Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same rating.
- Replace the cover.

Fuses in engine compartment

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component ⇨ *page 256*.
- Release the fuse cover ⇨ *Fig. 245*.
- Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover ⇨ *Fig. 245*.
- Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same rating.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
purple	3
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a higher ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system - risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Note

– Unassigned fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.
– Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses in vehicle interior

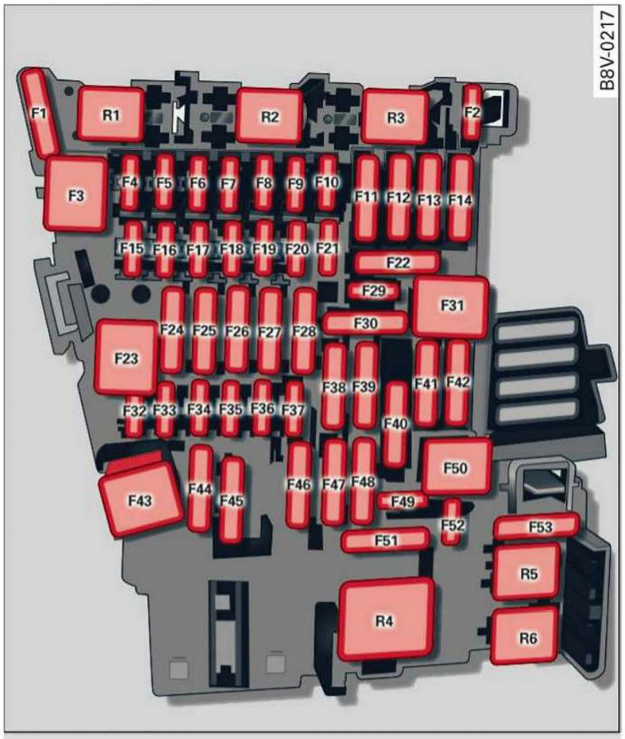


Fig. 246 Interior: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
F3	ESC control unit
F4	Central computer (MIB-2)
F5	Gateway
F6	Anti-theft alarm system
F7	Air conditioner console, selector lever (automatic gearbox), auxiliary heating, relay coil for rear window heating
F8	Diagnostics, switch for electronic parking brake, light switch, rain/light sensor, interior lighting
F9	Steering column switch module
F10	Display
F11	Haldex coupling
F12	MMI system
F13	Control unit for suspension control
F14	Air conditioner blower
F15	Electric steering column lock
F16	MMI system
F17	Instrument cluster
F18	Reversing camera
F19	Control unit for convenience key system
F20	Electric lumbar support adjuster
F23	Exterior lighting (right side), on-board computer (right side)
F25	Door/s, driver's side (e.g. electric windows)
F26	Seat heating
F28	Media socket for AMI High
F29	On-board computer
F31	On-board computer (left side)
F32	Driver assistance systems
F33	Airbag
F34	Electrical socket relay, interior sound, reversing light switch, temperature sensor, oil level sensor
F35	Diagnostics, headlight range control, air quality sensor, automatic anti-dazzle mirrors
F36	Cornering light (right side) / LED headlight (right side)
F37	Cornering light (left side) / LED headlight (left side)
F38	Engine control unit, ESC control unit
F39	Door(s), passenger's side (e.g. electric windows)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

No.	Electrical equipment
F40	Cigarette lighter, electrical sockets
F41	SCR relay and delivery unit
F42	Central locking system
F43	On-board computer
F45	Electrically adjustable seat (driver's side)
F49	Starter, clutch sensor
F50	ESC valves
F53	Rear window heating

The seats with electric adjustment* are protected by **circuit breakers**. These reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload has been corrected.

Fuses on left side of engine compartment



Fig. 247 Engine compartment: Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
F3	Engine control unit (petrol/diesel)
F4	Engine cooling, engine components, supplementary heater relay coils (1+2), secondary air pump relay
F5	Engine components, tank system
F6	Brake light sensor
F7	Engine components

No.	Electrical equipment
F8	Lambda probe
F9	Engine components, exhaust flap, control unit for automatic glow period
F10	Fuel injectors, fuel control unit
F11	Supplementary heater, heating rod 2
F12	Supplementary heater, heating rod 3
F13	Automatic gearbox control unit
F15	Horn
F16	Ignition coil
F17	ESC control unit, engine control unit
F18	Terminal 30 (reference voltage)
F19	Wipers
F20	Horn
F22	Terminal 50, diagnostics
F23	Starter
F24	Supplementary heater, heating rod 1
F32	LED headlights

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. If a bulb does need to be changed, however, please contact an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical data

Vehicle identification data

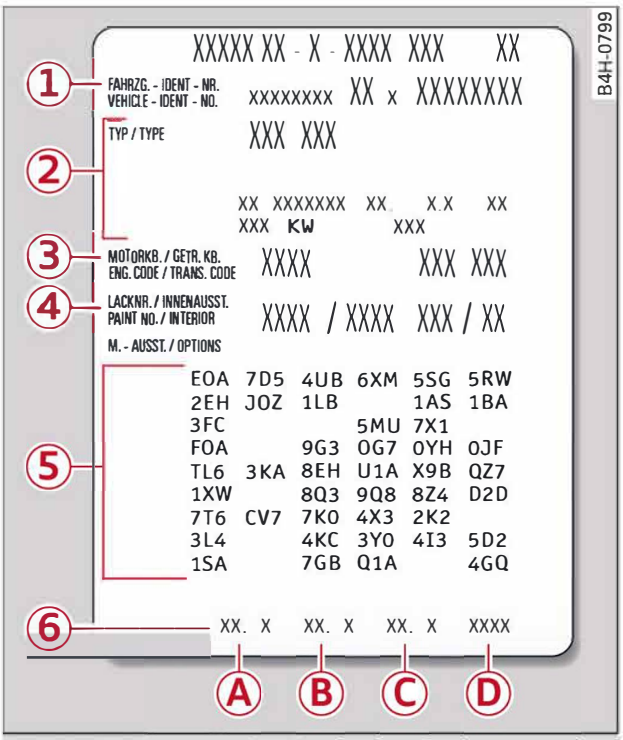


Fig. 248 Vehicle data sticker

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number can be found on the infotainment system, on the vehicle data sticker and behind the windscreen on the driver's side*. The chassis number is also located on the rear panel in the engine compartment*.

Type plate

The type plate is located in the engine compartment. Vehicles for certain export countries have no type plate.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇨ *Fig. 248* is under the carpet trim in the luggage compartment in the spare wheel well. One section of the vehicle data sticker is attached to the inside cover of the Service Schedule before the vehicle is handed over.

The sticker lists the following data:

① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
② Vehicle type / engine power / gearbox type
③ Engine and gearbox code letters
④ Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
⑤ Optional equipment codes
⑥ Fuel consumption and emissions*

Fuel consumption and emissions[1)]

Information on the vehicle's fuel consumption and emissions is given at the bottom of the vehicle data sticker ⑥:

Ⓐ Urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓑ Extra-urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓒ Combined cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
Ⓓ Combined CO_2 emissions (g/km)

The specified values were determined in accordance with the required test procedures. The specifications do **not** refer to an individual vehicle, but serve only as a basis for comparing the different types of vehicles. In addition, the consumption figures achieved during normal driving may differ from the test values, depending in particular on special equipment fitted, vehicle loading, personal driving style, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors and the condition of the car.

Dimensions

Length	mm	4177
Width	mm	1832
Width across mirrors	mm	1952
Height, unladen[1)]	mm	1353
Turning circle diameter	m	~ 10.7

[1)] The height of the vehicle depends on the tyres and suspension. Take care not to damage low-mounted parts of the car (such as the spoiler or exhaust system) on steep ramps, uneven road surfaces or roadside kerbs, etc. This applies especially when the vehicle is fully laden.

[1)] The figures are not available for all export versions. In this case, the fields contain place holders, for example 99.9.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Capacities

Fuel tank - Front-wheel drive - Four-wheel drive	 ltr. ltr.	 ~ 50 ~ 55
Windscreen and headlight washer system*	ltr.	~ 4.0

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets can vary due to different export versions and test procedures.

Please note that the details listed in the **vehicle's registration documents** can be taken as correct.

Performance figures

The performance figures were measured without equipment which may influence performance, such as mudflaps or extremely wide-section tyres.

Kerb weight (unladen weight)

For Europe and certain other markets: the kerb weight includes an allowance of 75 kg for the driver in accordance with EU Regulation 1230/2012.

Notes for following tables

MG = Manual gearbox / AG = Automatic gearbox

1) Maximum speed is achieved in the second highest gear.

2) This engine is available with reduced power for some markets (see car documentation). The performance figures may be slightly different.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Petrol engines

TT Coupé 2.0, 4-cylinder (169 kW)

Power output[2)]	169 kW at 4500 - 6200 rpm	
Maximum torque	370 Nm at 1600 - 4300 rpm	
		MG
Maximum speed[1)]	km/h	250
Acceleration from 0 - 100 km/h	sec.	6.0
Gross vehicle weight	kg	1630
Kerb weight (unladen weight)	kg	1305
Maximum front axle weight	kg	940
Maximum rear axle weight	kg	775

Footnotes ⇨ *page 258*

TT Coupé 2.0 quattro, 4-cylinder (169 kW)

Power output[2)]	169 kW at 4500 - 6200 rpm	
Maximum torque	370 Nm at 1600 - 4300 rpm	
		AG
Maximum speed[1)]	km/h	250
Acceleration from 0 - 100 km/h	sec.	5.3
Gross vehicle weight	kg	1735
Kerb weight (unladen weight)	kg	1410
Maximum front axle weight	kg	990
Maximum rear axle weight	kg	830

Footnotes ⇨ *page 258*

Diesel engine

TT Coupé 2.0 TDI quattro, 4-cylinder

Power output[2)]	135 kW at 3500 - 4000 rpm	
Maximum torque	380 Nm at 1750 - 3250 rpm	
		MG
Maximum speed	km/h	241
Acceleration from 0 - 100 km/h	sec.	7.1
Gross vehicle weight	kg	1665
Kerb weight (unladen weight)	kg	1340
Maximum front axle weight	kg	985
Maximum rear axle weight	kg	770

Footnotes ⇨ *page 258*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories, replacement parts and repairs

It is best to consult an authorised Audi dealer before purchasing accessories and replacement parts or having any repairs carried out.

Your car is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety. For this reason, we recommend that you ask your Audi dealer for advice before fitting accessories or replacement parts. This is also very important if **body repairs** are required. Audi dealers have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods and can recommend suitable accessories and spare parts. They can also give advice regarding official requirements for the vehicle.

We recommend you to use only **Audi accessories** and **Audi Genuine Parts**. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety. Audi dealers have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed properly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Audi cannot judge or assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of non-genuine products - even though in some instances, these parts may have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or accompanied by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's approval symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), these must bear the CE mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union).

WARNING

Never attach accessories (such as cup holders or telephone brackets) to the surfaces covering the airbag units or the areas around the airbags: this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.

Note

- Since the Audi TT has an aluminium body, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Use of non-genuine replacement parts, equipment or accessories on your Audi TT, or repair of the vehicle by unqualified persons, may result in serious damage to your car (possibly including corrosion).
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs as a result of failure to comply with these stipulations, and such damage is not covered under warranty.

Modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for your vehicle.

You will appreciate that your Audi dealer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

We recommend that all work should be performed by an Audi workshop using **Audi Genuine Parts**. ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.

Note

Modifications to the front of the vehicle and/or to the engine compartment (resulting from tuning measures, for instance) can impair the vehicle's pedestrian protection and void the vehicle's certification for use on public roads.

Radio transmitters and business equipment

Radio transmitters (fixed installation)

Retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle are subject to official approval. Audi generally authorises in-vehicle installations of approved types of radio transmitters provided that:

– The aerial is installed correctly.
– The aerial is not installed in the interior of the vehicle (and screened cables are used together with non-reflective aerial trimming).
– The effective transmitting power does not exceed 10 Watts at the aerial base.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters with a *higher* transmitting power.

Mobile radio transmitters

When using commercial mobile telephones or radio equipment it is possible that they might interfere with the electronics of your vehicle and cause malfunctions. The reasons could be:

– no external aerial
– external aerial incorrectly installed
– transmitting power more than 10 W

Therefore you must not operate portable mobile telephones or radio equipment *inside the vehicle* without a correctly installed external aerial ⇨ ⚠.

Please note also that the maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an *external* aerial.

Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or other equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle. Any such equipment must carry the CE mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for your vehicle and must carry the **e** mark.

WARNING

Mobile telephones or radio equipment which are operated inside the vehicle without a correctly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.

Note

– Any retrofit installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle will affect its type approval. In extreme cases this could mean that you might lose the type approval for your vehicle.
– Please refer to the mobile telephone/radio operating instructions.

Component protection

Some electronic control units and components, such as the sound system or navigation system, are equipped with component protection at the factory.

The purpose of the component protection is as follows:

– To prevent factory-fitted equipment from being re-installed and used freely in other vehicles (e.g. if they have been stolen)
– To prevent components from being used outside the vehicle
– To enable the legitimate installation and/or replacement of components and control units by a qualified service workshop

Possible text message and remedy: ▶

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Device	Text message	Possible remedy
Infotainment display	Some functions of the infotainment system are currently unavailable. Please switch on the ignition.	Switch on the ignition. If the component protection is still not deactivated, contact a qualified workshop.

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and production of your new Audi.

Design measures for economical recycling

– Modular construction to facilitate dismantling
– Plastic parts and elastomers are labelled in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629

Choice of materials

– Nearly all materials used can be recycled
– Similar types of plastics grouped together for easy recycling
– Recycled materials used in manufacture
– Reduced vapour emissions from plastics
– CFC-free refrigerant in air conditioner

Compliance with the laws prohibiting the use of: Cadmium, asbestos, lead, mercury, chrome VI and other substances such as flame retardants and plasticisers.

Manufacturing methods

– Using recycling material for manufacturing plastic parts
– Solvent-free cavity sealing
– Solvent-free wax for protecting the vehicles in transit
– Solvent-free adhesives
– No CFCs used in production
– Surplus materials used extensively for energy conversion and building materials
– Overall water consumption reduced
– Heat recovery systems
– Water-soluble paint

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Numbers and Symbols

360° display 94

A

A/C (automatic air conditioner) 55
A/C (manual air conditioner) 54
ABS
see Anti-lock brake system 102
Accelerator pedal 200
Accepting an entry suggestion 114
Accessories 260
Active lane assist 84
Driver messages 86
Indicator lamp 85
Setting steering vibration 87
Setting time of warning 87
Switching on/off 85
Adaptive light
Indicator lamp 17
Adjusting volume
Multi-function steering wheel 20, 21
Airbag 209
Deactivating front passenger's airbag . . . 211
Front airbags 210
Head-protection airbag 215
Side airbags 214
Warning lamp 14
Air conditioner (automatic)
Adjusting air outlets 55, 56
Air distribution, air outlets 55
Air recirculation mode 56
AUTO (automatic mode) 55
Blower 55
Controls 55
Defrosting windows 56
Drive select 90
Key-coded settings 55
Rear window heating 56
Selecting temperature 55
Air conditioner (manual)
Adjusting air outlets 54, 56
Adjusting temperature 54
Air distribution, air outlets 54
Air recirculation mode 54
Blower 53
Controls 53
Defrosting windows 54
Key-coded settings 53
Rear window heating 54
Air distribution, setting
Automatic air conditioner 55
Manual air conditioner 54
Air outlets, adjusting 56
Air recirculation mode
Automatic air conditioner 56
Manual air conditioner 54
Alarm system
see Anti-theft alarm system 25, 31
All-season tyres
see All-weather tyres 233
All-weather lights 37
All-weather tyres 233
Alterations to the vehicle 260
Alternative frequency (radio) 166
Alternative route 155
Alternator (warning lamp) 13
AMI
see Audi music interface 174, 175
Announcements (traffic programme) 190
Anti-dazzle exterior mirrors 42
Anti-dazzle interior mirror 42
Anti-freeze
Coolant 224
Windscreen washer system 229
Anti-lock brake system 102
Anti-theft alarm system 31
Anti-theft wheel bolts 244
Armrest, front 47
Ashtray 48
ASR
see Traction control system 102
Assigning function to button (multi-function steering wheel) 20
Audi connect 137
Activating 137
Closing 140
Configuring 143
Connecting a mobile phone 137
Connection settings 187
Data protection 146
Functions 140

152.561.8FV.20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Google Earth 159
Google Street View 159
Importing myAudi contacts 133
Logging into myAudi 140
myAudi destination 151
Navigation 140, 151
Notes 145
Online traffic information 161
Options menu 143
Personal hotspot 139
Preview 140
Requirements 137
Search area 140
Settings 143
SIM card reader 138
Troubleshooting 146
Audi connect services
Media 143
Navigation 142
Options 143
Telephone 143
Audi connect services, using
MMI control console 137
Speech dialogue system 118
Audi magnetic ride
see Suspension control 90
Audi music interface 174
Cables 174
USB adapters 174
Audi music stream
see Wi-Fi audio player 172
Audio files 179
Audio input
see AUX input 175, 176
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 171
Wi-Fi audio player 172
Audio track 181
Audi phone box 125
Audi side assist
see Side assist 87
AUTO
Automatic air conditioner 55
Automatic headlights 37
Auto Lock (central locking system) 25
Automatic air conditioner
see Air conditioner (automatic) 55
Automatic gearbox 70
Back-up programme 77
Downhill speed control 74
Driving tips 72
Kick-down 75
Launch control programme 76
Malfunction 71
Manual gear selection 75
Manual release of selector lever (left-hand drive) 78
Manual release of selector lever (right-hand drive) 79
Selector lever lock 71
Selector lever positions 70
Steering wheel with paddle levers 75
tiptronic 75
Automatic zoom 158
AUX input 175, 176
Average fuel consumption 22
Average speed 22

B

Background lighting 40
Balance (sound) 190
Bandages
see First-aid kit 241
Bass (sound) 190
Battery 226
Charge 13, 106
Charging 228
Connecting/disconnecting 226
Indicator lamp 13
Long periods of non-use 226
Power management 106
Replacing 228
Winter conditions 226
Battery, charging 125
Belts
see Seat belts 204
Better route 160
Biodiesel 217
Bioethanol (fuel) 217
Blower
Automatic air conditioner 55
Manual air conditioner 53

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth
Audio player 171
Connecting a mobile phone 124
Device search 134
Handsfree Profile 123
Remote SIM Access Profile (rSAP) 123
Secure simple pairing 124, 137
Settings 134
Boot
see Luggage compartment 201
Boot lid
Manual release 33
Opening/closing 32
Brakes 101
Brake assist system 102
Brake fluid 226
Brake pads worn 14
Brake pedal 200
Brake servo 101
Driving away on a slope 69
Emergency braking aid 102
Emergency braking function 68
Indicator lamp 14
New brake pads 101
Parking brake 66
Warning lamp 11
Bulbs, changing 256
Buttons
MMI control console 109
Multi-function steering wheel 19, 21

C

Cables
AUX adapter 174
USB adapter 174
Calling up a menu 109
Calling up media 179
Call list
MMI control console 128
Speech dialogue system 118
Call options 134
Calls
Answering/ignoring 128
Hold/resume 129
see also Telephone 123
Call waiting 134
Camera-based traffic sign recognition 23
Capacities
Fuel tank 258
Washer fluid reservoir 258
Caps for wheel bolts, removing 244
Car care
Washing/cleaning 236
Car keys 25
Car telephone kit
see Telephone 123
Catalytic converter 220
CD 169, 170
Central locking system 25
Boot lid 32
Central locking switch 29
Convenience key 28
Electric windows 34
Locking doors manually 30
Remote control key 28
Settings 30
Centre console lighting, adjusting brightness 41
Cetane number (diesel) 217
Changing bulbs 256
Charging battery 175, 176
Child lock (DVD) 183
Child seats 195
Categories 197
ISOFIX 198
ISOFIX and top tether 199
Side airbags 196
Cigarette lighter 48
City events (Audi connect) 141
Cleaning 236
Cleaning/de-icing windows 238
Cleaning/treating natural leather 239
Cleaning Alcantara 239
Cleaning Audi virtual cockpit 238
Cleaning carbon parts 238, 239
Cleaning controls and displays 238
Cleaning displays 238
Cleaning fabrics 239
Cleaning instrument cluster 238
Cleaning leatherette 239
Cleaning plastic parts 238
Cleaning seat upholstery 239
Closed roads 154

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Closing
Bonnet ... 222
Windows ... 33
Coasting mode ... 75
Coat hooks ... 50
Colour code ... 257
Coming home ... 40
Command (speech dialogue system) ... 116
Compact temporary spare wheel ... 247
Compartments ... 49
Compass in mirror ... 44
Conference calling ... 129
Connecting a mobile phone
Requirements ... 124, 137
Connection manager ... 187
Audi MMI connect app ... 187
Bluetooth settings ... 188
Data connection ... 187
Directory ... 188
Music ... 187
Network settings ... 188
Online settings ... 188
Options ... 188
SIM PIN settings ... 188
Telephone ... 187
Connections
see Media drives ... 168
Consumption (fuel) ... 22, 257
Contact
Calling ... 133
Deleting ... 133, 135
Editing ... 133
Finding ... 131
Greying out ... 135
Having read out ... 133
Importing/exporting ... 133
Navigating to ... 133, 149
Searching for ... 132
Sending as text message ... 133
Using from another mobile phone ... 132
Contacts
Favourites ... 129
Controls
Multi-function steering wheel ... 19
Controls and displays (overview) ... 6
Controls (MMI control console) ... 109
Control units ... 107
Convenience key
Indicator lamp ... 62
Locking and unlocking the vehicle ... 28
Switching off engine (START ENGINE STOP button) ... 61
Convenience open/close ... 34
Cooling mode (automatic air conditioner) ... 55
Cooling mode (manual air conditioner) ... 54
Cooling system
Anti-freeze ... 224
Checking coolant level ... 225
Coolant temperature gauge ... 8
Topping up coolant ... 225
Warning lamp ... 12
Copyright
Media drives ... 168
Cornering light ... 90
Country information ... 157
Cruise control system
Adjusting stored speed ... 81
Pre-selecting a speed ... 81
Switching off ... 81
Switching on ... 80
Cup holder ... 49
Current fuel consumption ... 22

D

DAB (digital radio) ... 166
Data connection
Configuring ... 144
Data connection ... 144
Data roaming ... 144
Resetting configuration ... 144
Usage meter ... 188
Data encryption ... 186
Data protection
Audi connect ... 146
Date ... 22, 186
Daytime running lights ... 37
Deactivating front passenger's airbag ... 211
Defrosting (windows)
Automatic air conditioner ... 56
Manual air conditioner ... 54
DEF (instrument cluster) ... 22

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deleting
Bluetooth device ... 134
Call list ... 134
Contact ... 133, 135
Entry ... 111, 113
Favourites ... 129, 153
Home address ... 153
myAudi special destinations ... 153
Text messages ... 130
Deluxe automatic air conditioner
see Air conditioner (automatic) ... 55
Demo mode
see Presentation mode ... 153
Destination from map ... 149
Destination, entering ... 147, 148
Address ... 148
Coordinates ... 151
Favourites ... 149
From directory ... 149
Home address ... 149
Last destination ... 148
myAudi ... 151
Online search ... 151
Search function ... 148
Special destination ... 150
Speech dialogue system ... 119
Stopover ... 152
Diagnostic connection ... 107
Diesel
Diesel particulate filter ... 220
Draining fuel filter ... 16
Engine oil ... 223
Fuel ... 217
Indicator lamp ... 15
Preheating (glow plugs) ... 60
Digital compass ... 44
Dimensions
Vehicle dimensions ... 257
Dipped headlights ... 37
Directional tread (tyres) ... 247
Directory ... 131
Connection settings ... 188
Memory capacity ... 135
MMI touch ... 111
Navigation destination ... 149
Postal address ... 149
Search function ... 131, 132
Settings ... 135
Sort order ... 135
Storage locations ... 131
Storing a destination ... 153
Symbols ... 149
Directory entry
see Contact ... 133
Display
Brightness ... 186
Multi-function steering wheel ... 19, 21
Navigation map ... 156
Settings ... 186
Traffic information ... 160
see also Infotainment display ... 186
Distance covered ... 22
Door catches, bonnet and boot lid warning ... 18
Doors
Locking doors manually ... 30
Door safelock ... 31
Downhill speed control ... 74
Draining fuel filter (diesel) ... 16
Driver information system ... 21
CD/radio display ... 18
Door catches, bonnet and boot lid warning 18
Driver messages ... 9
On-board computer ... 22
Outside temperature display ... 18
Service interval display ... 229
Switching between displays ... 19, 21
Warning and indicator lamps ... 9
Drives
see Media drives ... 168
Drive select ... 90
Indicator lamp ... 17
Driving away from a standstill
Hill hold assist ... 69
Hold assist ... 68
Parking brake auto release ... 67
Driving on left ... 40
Driving on right ... 40
Driving through water ... 58
Driving time ... 22
Dust filter
see Pollution filter ... 53
DVD ... 169
Child lock ... 183
Drive ... 169

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MMI touch 111
Speech dialogue system 121
Dynamic volume control
see Entertainment volume 190

E

E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 217
ECO mode (automatic air conditioner) 55
Economical driving 58
Economical route 155
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 102
Electrical socket 48
Electric seat adjustment 46
Electric windows 33
Convenience open/close 34
Malfunction 34
Electro-mechanical parking brake
see Parking brake 66
Electro-mechanical power steering 101
Indicator lamp 101
Electronic differential lock 103
Electronic immobiliser 25
Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) 102
Indicator lamp 14
Sport mode 104
Emergency calls 131
Emergency key 25, 27
Emission control systems
Catalytic converter 220
Diesel particulate filter 220
Emission control system (indicator lamp) . . . 15
Emissions 257
Engine
Coolant 224
Jump-starting 248
Preheating (glow plugs) 60
Start/stop system 63
Starting 60
Starting (driver messages for convenience key) 62
Switching off 61
Switching off (driver messages for mechanical ignition lock) 62
Engine compartment
Closing bonnet 222
Layout 222
Opening bonnet 221
Safety notes 220
Engine management (indicator lamp) 15
Engine oil 223
Changing 223
Checking oil level 223
Consumption 223
Indicator lamp 15, 16
Oil change service 223
Service intervals 223
Topping up 224
Warning lamp 12
Engine speed governing (indicator lamp) . . . 15
Engine start/stop mode
see Start/stop system 65
Entering
Using MMI touch 111
Using the speech dialogue system 116
Using the speller 113
Entertainment volume 190
Environmental compatibility 262
Environmental tips
Filling the tank 218, 219
Leaks 221
Minimising pollution 58
Roof carrier 52
EPC (engine management) 15
EPG
see Programme guide 163
ESC
Multicollision brake assist system 103
Sport mode 104
Ethanol (fuel) 217
Event data recorder 107
Event memory 107
Exclude route 155
Exporting/importing contacts 133
Exterior lights 37
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 41
Anti-dazzle setting 42
Heating 41

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

F

Facebook (Audi connect) ... 141
Factory settings ... 186
Fader (sound) ... 190
FAME (fuel) ... 217
Fastening rings ... 202
Fast forward/rewind (audio/video file) ... 179
Fast route ... 155
Favourite
  Editing ... 153
  Entering as a destination ... 149
  Storing ... 153
Favourites
  Adding as a destination ... 119
  Media ... 182
  Navigation ... 149
  Radio ... 165
  Telephone ... 129
File formats (media drives) ... 177
Filling station message ... 153
Filling the tank ... 218
  Fuel gauge ... 9
  Opening fuel tank flap ... 218
  Releasing tank flap manually ... 220
  Tank capacity ... 258
  Using spare fuel canister ... 219
Finding entries
  see Search function ... 114, 163, 182
Fire extinguisher ... 241
First-aid kit ... 241
Fixed oil change service ... 223
Flexible oil change service ... 223
Flight information (Audi connect) ... 141
Floor mats ... 200
Fog lights ... 37
Footwell light ... 40
Four-wheel drive ... 105
Frequency band
  see Waveband ... 163
Front seats
  see Seats ... 46
Front window
  see Windscreen ... 42
Fuel ... 217
  Consumption ... 257
  Current fuel consumption ... 22
  Ethanol ... 217
  Fuel gauge ... 8, 9
  Saving fuel ... 58, 90
  Tank capacity ... 258
  Warning light ... 16
Fuel economy
  Coasting mode ... 75
  Recuperation ... 22
Fuel prices (Audi connect) ... 141
Fuel range ... 22
Fuses
  Changing ... 254
  Fuse list ... 255
  In vehicle interior ... 254

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) ... 34
Gearbox malfunction (indicator lamp) ... 77
Generator
  see Alternator (warning lamp) ... 13
Global commands (speech dialogue system) 117
Glove box ... 49
Google Earth ... 159
Google Street View ... 159
GPS (time) ... 186

H

Handbook ... 189
Handbrake
  see Parking brake ... 66
Handsfree ... 123
  see also Telephone ... 123
Having text read out
  Text message ... 130
  Traffic information ... 160
Hazard warning lights ... 40
  Indicator lamp ... 17
Headlamp converter ... 40
Headlight range control ... 37
  Indicator lamp ... 17
Headlights
  Headlight range control ... 37
  Washer system ... 42
  Washing ... 237

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heated
Exterior mirrors 41
Rear window 54, 56
Washer jets 42
Heater (supplementary heater for diesel engine) 57
Heating
Seats 56
Heating/ventilation system
Adjusting air outlets 56
Controls 53
Help
Audi connect 146
Emergency calls 131
Media 184
Navigation 162
Radio 167
Speech dialogue system 117
Telephone 136
Hill hold assist 69
Hill starting
see Hill hold assist 69
Home address
Editing 153
Navigation 153
Storing 153
HomeLink (garage door opener) 34
Horn 6
How to use
MMI control console 109
Multi-function steering wheel 19, 21
Speech dialogue system 116
Hubcaps, removing 244

I

Identification data
Chassis number 257
Ignition
Warning lamp 13
Immobiliser 22, 25
Importing/exporting contacts 133
Indicator lamps
see Warning lamps 9
Individual speech training 186
Inflation pressure (tyres) 233, 234
Infotainment display
Brightness 186
Google Earth map 159
Navigation map 156
Input help 153
Input level (media) 183
Inspection intervals 229
Instrument cluster 8
Instruments 8
Adjusting brightness 41
Interference (radio) 167
Interior lights 40
Interior monitor 31
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 42
Internet
see Audi connect 137
Internet connection, establishing 138, 139
Internet radio 172
iPod
see Audi music interface 174, 175
ISOFIX (securing child seats) 198

J

Jack 242, 245, 247
Jacking points 245
Jack plug (3.5 mm)
see AUX input 175, 176
Joystick
Adjusting balance/fader 112
Adjusting sound focus 112
Moving map 112
Operating DVD main menu 112
Jukebox 170
Deleting 170
Filling 170
Memory status 170
Jump-starting 248

K

Kerb weight 258
Key-coded settings
Automatic air conditioner 55
Manual air conditioner 53
Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag 211

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys 25
Driver messages (for convenience key) 62
Driver messages (for mechanical ignition lock) 62
Emergency key 25, 27
Locking and unlocking the vehicle 28, 30
No key identified 63
Replacement keys 25
Replacing the battery 27
Kick-down
Automatic gearbox 75
Manual gearbox 69

L

Lamp failure
Indicator lamp 16
Lane assist
see Active lane assist 84
Lane change assist feature
see Side assist 87
Lane departure warning feature
see Active lane assist 84
Language, setting 186
Launch control programme (automatic gearbox) 76
L band (DAB) 166
Leaving home 40
Left control button 20, 110
Letters, entering (using the speller) 113
Licence conditions 191
Lights
Coming/leaving home 40
Daytime running lights 37
Dipped headlights 37
Exterior lights 37
Front/rear fog lights 37
Headlight flasher 38
Headlight range control 37
Interior/reading lights 40
Main beam assist 38
Main beam headlights 38
Parking lights 38
Side lights 37
Light sensor/rain sensor
Headlights 37
Indicator lamp 17
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . 42
Locking/unlocking
By remote control 28
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
With the key 30
Luggage compartment
Cover 50
Extending 51
Fastening rings 202
Loading 201
Stowing luggage safely 201
Lumbar support 46

M

Mailbox 131
Main beam headlights 38
Main beam assist 38
Main menu, calling up 109
Maintenance intervals 229
Make-up mirrors 42
Manual gearbox
Kick-down 69
Manual operation
Boot lid 33
Doors 30
Emergency braking function 68
Manual release
Fuel tank flap 220
Selector lever (left-hand drive) 78
Selector lever (right-hand drive) 79
Map
Audi connect 157
Automatic zoom 158
Calling up 149
Changing map scale 149
Colours 158
Display 156, 158
Displaying traffic information 160
Google Earth 159
How to use 156
Options menu 157
Orientation 158
Parking facility 157
Preview 147
Settings 158
Special destinations along the route 157
Speech dialogue system 119

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switch to destination entry 157
Traffic 161
Traffic message 157
Using a destination 149
Using the crosshairs 149, 156
Map content 156
Map functions 157
Map update
see Navigation map update 142
Matt paintwork, washing 236
Measurement units 186
Media
Albums 180
Artists 180
Change play position 181
Connection settings 187
Display DVD menu 181
Favourites 182
Folders 180
Formats 177
Genres 180
Options 181
Pause 179
Play entire medium 181
Playlists 180, 182
Random playback 181
Repeat track 181
Replay video 181
Selecting a source 179
Source overview 179
Speech dialogue system 121
Tracks 180
Troubleshooting 184
Videos 180
see also Media 181
Media drives 168
Audi music interface 174
Bluetooth audio player 171
CD drive 170
DVD drive 169
Formats supported 177
Jukebox 170
Limitations 168
Online media 173
SD card readers 169
Troubleshooting 184
Wi-Fi audio player 172
Media settings 183
Memory capacity
Directory 135
Memory card 169, 177
Memory list
see Favourites 165
Memory status
Jukebox 170
Menu language 186
Menu, calling up 109
Messages (text messages) 130
Microphone on/off 129
Mileage recorder 22
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 41
Anti-dazzle setting 42
Make-up mirrors 42
MMI control console
How to use 109
Options menu 110
Restart 191
Search function 114
Selection menu 110
Switching on/off 109
System update 186
MMI search
see Search function 114, 163, 182
MMI settings 186
MMI touch
Adjusting sound focus 111
Deleting an entry 111
Directory 111
DVD 111
Moving map 111
Switching character sets 111
Mobile phone
Audi phone box 125
Connecting 124, 137
Playing music 171
see also Telephone 123
Mobile phones 261
Mobile phone tray
see Audi phone box 125
Modifications 260
Mounting pin (for changing wheels) 242
MP3 player, connecting/disconnecting 171

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-function steering wheel
Button ... 20
How to use the multi-function steering wheel ... 19, 21
Navigation cues ... 20
Pause ... 20, 21
Speech dialogue system ... 20
Switching between displays ... 19, 21
Switching between tabs ... 19, 21
Multicollision brake assist system ... 103
Multi Media Interface (MMI) ... 109
Music collection
see Jukebox ... 170
Mute ... 20, 21, 190
myAudi ... 137, 138
Calling up a destination ... 151
Configuring Audi connect services ... 139
Importing contacts ... 133
Logging on in the vehicle ... 140
PIN ... 140
Special destinations ... 153

N

Natural commands ... 122
Navigation ... 147
Audi connect ... 152
Avoiding road(s) ... 155
Better route ... 160
Country information ... 158
Deleting a destination ... 152
Destination from map ... 149
Directory ... 149
Display alternative routes ... 155
Economical route ... 155
Entering a destination using coordinates ... 151
Entering an address ... 148
Entering stopover ... 152
Exclude route ... 155
Fast route ... 155
Favourites ... 149
Home address ... 149
Input help ... 153
Last destination ... 148
Map display ... 156
Map preview ... 147
Map settings ... 158
MMI control console ... 147
MMI touch ... 147, 148
myAudi destination ... 151
Online search ... 151
Online traffic data ... 152
Options menu ... 152
Parking ... 152
Search area ... 151
Search function ... 148
Show location on map ... 152
Special destination ... 150
Speech dialogue system ... 119
Stopping route guidance ... 152
Storing a destination in the directory ... 153
Traffic information ... 160
Troubleshooting ... 162
see also Map ... 156
Navigation cue ... 154
During a telephone call ... 154
Traffic ... 154
Navigation map update ... 142, 147
Network connection (Wi-Fi) ... 143
Network selection (telephone mode) ... 134
Network settings ... 134
Noise compensation (GALA) ... 190
Notes
Audi connect ... 137, 145
Audi music interface ... 175
CD/DVD ... 168
Copyright (media drives) ... 168
Media drives ... 168
Navigation ... 147
Navigation map update ... 147
Software licences ... 191
Speech dialogue system ... 116, 117
Telephone ... 123
Traffic safety ... 192
Numbers/characters, entering (using the speller) ... 113

O

Octane rating (petrol) ... 217
Oil
see Engine oil ... 223
Oil change intervals ... 229
Oil change service ... 223
Oil dipstick ... 223

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On-board computer ... 22
ON/OFF button ... 109
Online destinations ... 119, 151
Online media ... 173
Online news (Audi connect) ... 141
Online services
see Audi connect ... 137
Online traffic information ... 161
Opening
Bonnet ... 221
Fuel tank flap ... 218
Windows ... 33
Options menu
Audi connect ... 143
Connection manager ... 188
Directory ... 135
Map ... 157
Media ... 181
Media settings ... 183
Messages ... 130
MMI control console ... 110
Navigation ... 152
Radio ... 163
Radio settings ... 166
Selecting settings ... 20
Telephone ... 134
Outside temperature display ... 18
Overview of speech dialogue system ... 116
Overview (controls and displays) ... 6

P

Paddle levers (automatic gearbox) ... 75
Paint damage ... 238
Paint No. ... 257
Park assist ... 95
Description ... 95
Driver messages ... 99
Driving out of a parking space ... 98
Finding a parking space ... 97
Parking ... 98
Parking aid ... 93
Cleaning sensors ... 237
Parking aids
360° display ... 94
Adjusting graphic display/warning beeps ... 100
Malfunction ... 100
Park assist ... 95
Parking system plus ... 94
Rear parking aid ... 93
Parking brake ... 66
Driving away from a standstill ... 67
Emergency braking function ... 68
Parking the car ... 67
Power supply failure ... 66
Releasing/applying ... 66
Warning lamp ... 11, 66
Parking information (Audi connect) ... 140
Parking lights ... 38
Parking system
see Parking aids ... 94
Parking (automatic gearbox) ... 72
Particulate filter (diesel) ... 220
Passenger's door, locking manually ... 30
Pause (audio/video file) ... 20, 21, 179
Pedals ... 200
Pedestrian protection system ... 202
Servicing ... 203
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot ... 139
Petrol ... 217
Phone book
see Directory ... 131
Phone pre-installation
see Telephone ... 123
Picture format ... 181
Playback (media) ... 179
Playing
Contact ... 133
Possible commands ... 117
Point of interest search ... 151
Polishing ... 238
Pollen filter
see Pollution filter ... 53
Pollution filter ... 53
Power management ... 106
Indicator lamp ... 13
Power steering
see Electro-mechanical power steering ... 101
Preheating (glow plugs) ... 60
Presentation mode ... 153
Pressure (tyres) ... 233, 234
Programme guide ... 163

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q

quattro (four-wheel drive) 105

R

Radio 163
Alternative frequency 166
Announcements 164
Detailed station information 164
Favourites 165
Manual station search 163
Menu 165
MMI control console 163
Options 163
Programme guide 163
Radio settings 166
Radio text 164
Searching for a radio station 163
Seek 163
Sound settings 163
Speech dialogue system 121
Station list 163
Station names 164
Troubleshooting 167
Waveband 165
Radio-operated remote control
see Remote control keys 25
Radio equipment 261
Radio settings 166
Alternative frequency 166
Detailed station information 166
Preferred image 166
Radio transmitters 261
Rain sensor/light sensor
Headlights 37
Indicator lamp 17
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . 42
Reading lights 40
Rear seats, folding down 51
Rear spoiler 105
Rear window heating 54, 56
Recuperation 22
Redial 134
Refuelling with spare fuel canister 219
Regional stations (radio) 166
Remote control keys 25
LED 27
Locking and unlocking the vehicle 28
Personalised key 25
Replacing the battery 27
Remote SIM Access Profile (rSAP) 123
Repair kit
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 242
Repairs 260
Replacement keys 25
Replacement parts 260
Requirements
Connecting a mobile phone 137
Reset button (trip recorder) 22
Resetting (data connection) 144
Restart (reset) 191
Restricted use of telephone 124, 137
Rev counter 8, 21
Reverse gear (automatic gearbox) 70
Rewind (audio/video file) 179
Right control button 20, 110
Ring tone settings 134, 190
Roaming
see Data connection 144
Roof carrier 52
Roof load 52
Roof rack 52
Rotary pushbutton 109
Rotary pushbutton with joystick function . . 112
Route criteria 154
Route guidance
see Navigation 148
Route information 158
Route list 157, 158
Running in
New brake pads 101
New engine 58
New tyres 231

S

Safe driving 192
Safelock mechanism 25, 31
Safety
Airbag system 209
Child seats 195

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Correct sitting position 193
Luggage 201
Navigation 147
Pedal area 200
Seat belts 204
Speech dialogue system 116
Telephone 123
Safety features 192
Safety systems (warning lamp) 14
Screen
see Display 19, 21
Screwdriver 242
SD card readers 169
Search function 114
Directory 132
Media 182
Navigation 148
Radio 163
Searching for an entry 114
Seat belts 204
Adjusting seat belts 207
Belt tensioners 208
Cleaning 238
During pregnancy 207
Indicator lamp (rear) 17
Putting on 206
Securing child seats 200
Taking off 208
Warning lamp 13
Seat heating 56
Seats
Adjusting 46
Correct sitting position 193
Easy entry function 47
Folding down 51
Secure simple pairing 124
Security
Audi connect 143
Copyright (media drives) 168
Selecting and confirming (MMI control console) 109
Selection menu
Multi-function steering wheel 20
Selection menu (MMI control console) 110
Selective wheel torque control 102
Selector lever (automatic gearbox)
Manual release (left-hand drive) 78
Manual release (right-hand drive) 79
Positions 70
Self-help 241
Serial number (telephone) 134
Service interval display 229
Service intervals 223
Service position
see Wiper blades, changing 44
Settings 186
Directory 135
Map 158
Media 183
Speech dialogue system 116, 186
System 186
Telephone 134
Setting up traffic programme (TP) 164
Short dialogue 186
Show on map 153
Side assist 87
Adjusting brightness 90
Area covered by sensors 88
Switching on and off 89
Side lights 37
SIM card reader 126, 138
Telephone options 126
Smartphone
see Mobile phone 124
SMS
see Text messages 130
Snow chains 234
Software licences 191
Software update 186
see also Navigation map update 142
Software version 186
SOS
see Emergency calls 131
Sound adjustment (Tone) 190
Source overview 179
Spanner 242
Spare key 25
Spare wheel 247
Special destination
Entering 119, 150
Search area 150

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speech dialogue system 116
How to use 116
Individual speech training 186
Input help 116
Multi-function steering wheel 20
Notes 117
Overview 116
Overview of commands 116
Settings 116, 186
Switching on/off 116
Volume 20, 116, 190
Speech dialogue system commands
Audi connect 118
Global commands 117
Map 119
Media 121
Natural commands 122
Navigation 119
Radio 121
Telephone 118
Text messages 119
Speed dependent volume control (GALA) . . 190
Speed display 156
Speed limiter 82
Speedometer 8, 18
Speed warning 80
Speller 113
Sport mode 104
Start/stop system 63
Driver messages 66
Engine cuts in automatically 64
Engine does not switch off 64
Indicator lamps 64
Switching off/on 65
Switching off/starting the engine 64
START ENGINE STOP button 60
Starting engine 60
Starting with jump leads 248
Start location (presentation mode) 153
Station list (radio) 163
Station memory
see Favourites 165
Station sorting (radio) 166
Steering
Electro-mechanical power steering 101
Warning lamp 13
Steering wheel
Adjusting 60
Paddle levers (automatic gearbox) 75
see also Multi-function steering wheel 19, 20, 21
Stopover 152
Stopping route guidance 152
Storage compartments 49
Storage location (directory) 131
Store current position 157
S tronic gearbox
see Automatic gearbox 70
S tronic (automatic gearbox) 70
Subtitles 181
Subwoofer (sound) 190
Summer time 186
Sun visors 42
Supplementary heater (vehicles with diesel engine) 57
Suspension control 90
Indicator lamp 17
Switching between calls 129
Switching between tabs
see Multi-function steering wheel . 19, 20, 21
Switching off engine 61
Switching on ignition 60
Switching telephone on/off 134
Symbols
Directory 149
Map 156
Navigation 156
Route criteria 155
Traffic 161
Traffic information 160
see also Warning lamps 9
System settings 186
Systems (sound) 190
System update 186

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 32
Technical data 257
Telephone 123
Connection settings 187
Favourites 129

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main functions 127
Microphone on/off 129
MMI control console 123
Options during a call 129
Replacing a call 129
Settings 134
SIM card 126
Speech dialogue system 118
Troubleshooting 136
Telephone mode 134
Telephone number
Call list 128
Dialling 128
Directory 128
Favourites 128
Temperature display
Coolant 8
Outside temperature 18
Temperature selection
Automatic air conditioner 55
Temperature setting
Manual air conditioner 54
Tethering 139
Text messages 130
Deleting 130
Having read out 119
Options 130
Sending contact 133
Writing 130
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 247
Time 22, 186
tiptronic (automatic gearbox) 75
TMC/TMCpro
see Traffic information (TMC) 160
Tone (sound) 190
Tools 242
Top speed 156
Top tether and ISOFIX (securing child seats) 199
Torque
Wheel bolts 247
Tow-away protection 31
Tow-starting 250
Towing away 250
Towline anchorage 242
TPMS (tyre pressure loss indicator) 234
Traction control system 103
Traffic avoidance 154, 160
Traffic information (TMC) 160
Calling up 160
Having read out 160
Showing on map 160
Volume 190
Traffic safety 192
Traffic sign recognition
see Camera-based traffic sign recognition . 23
Train information (Audi connect) 141
Travel information (Audi connect) 140
Treble (sound) 190
Trip recorder, resetting 22
Troubleshooting
Audi connect 146
Media drives 184
Navigation 162
Radio 167
Telephone 136
Turn signals 38
Indicator lamp 17
Twitter (Audi connect) 142
Type plate
Chassis number 257
Tyres 242
Changing 244
Directional tread 247
Four-wheel drive 105
Inflation pressure 233
Repair kit 242
Service life 232
Tyre pressure loss indicator 234
Wear indicator 232

U

Unlocking/locking
By remote control 28
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
With the key 30
USB adapters 174
USB charging socket 176
USB stick
see Audi music interface 174, 175
Using phone book from another mobile phone 132

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

V

Vehicle
- Raising . . . 245
- Taking out of service . . . 240

Vehicle data sticker . . . 257

Vehicle identification data
- Vehicle ID number (VIN) . . . 257

Version information . . . 186

Video
- Picture format . . . 181
- Video files . . . 179

View (multi-function steering wheel) . . . 19, 21

Voice command (speech dialogue system) . 116

Voice guidance
- *see* Multi-function steering wheel . 19, 20, 21

Volume . . . 190
- Entertainment volume . . . 190
- MMI touch . . . 190
- Parking aid . . . 190
- Speech dialogue system . . . 20, 116
- System volume . . . 190
- Telephone . . . 190
- Traffic programme . . . 190

Volume adjustment
- MMI control console . . . 190
- Multi-function steering wheel . . . 116
- Speech dialogue system . . . 190

Volume off (mute) . . . 20, 21

W

Warning lamps . . . 9

Warning triangle . . . 241

Washer fluid level (indicator lamp) . . . 16

Washing . . . 236

Washing ornamental trim/mouldings . 237, 238

Washing rear lights . . . 237

Washing tailpipes . . . 237

Washing wheel rims . . . 237

Waveband . . . 163, 165

Waxing . . . 238

Weather (Audi connect) . . . 141

Web radio . . . 172

Wheel bolt caps
- Removing . . . 244

Wheel bolts
- Anti-theft . . . 244
- Loosening . . . 245
- Torque . . . 247

Wheel imbalance . . . 232

Wheels . . . 231
- Changing . . . 244, 246
- Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . 234
- Washing . . . 237

Wi-Fi
- Audi music stream . . . 172
- Audio player . . . 172
- Hotspot . . . 143
- Mobile . . . 139
- Online media . . . 173
- Settings . . . 143

Wi-Fi audio player . . . 172

Windows
- Cleaning/de-icing . . . 238
- Defrosting (automatic air conditioner) . . . 56
- Defrosting (manual air conditioner) . . . 54
- Operating . . . 33

Windscreen
- Defrosting (automatic air conditioner) . . . 56
- Defrosting (manual air conditioner) . . . 54
- Washing . . . 42

Windscreen washer system . . . 42, 229
- Reservoir capacity . . . 258

Windscreen wipers
- Changing blades . . . 44
- Cleaning wiper blades . . . 43
- Indicator lamp . . . 16
- Lifting wipers off windscreen . . . 44
- Switching on/off . . . 42

Winter conditions
- Battery . . . 226
- Cooling system . . . 224
- De-icing windows . . . 238
- Defrosting windows (automatic air conditioner) . . . 56
- Diesel . . . 217
- Seat heating . . . 56
- Snow chains . . . 234
- Tyres . . . 233
- Washing the vehicle . . . 236
- Windscreen washer system . . . 229

Winter tyres . . . 233

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper blades, changing 44
WLAN
see Wi-Fi 172
Wrench 242
Writing a message 130

X

Xenon headlights 37

Z

Zoom (map) 119

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

© 2014 AUDI AG

AUDI AG works continuously to develop and further improve all models. You will appreciate that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this Manual.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG. Subject to alteration and amendment. Printed in Germany.

Date of publication: 17.06.2014

For the sake of the environment

This paper was bleached without use of chlorine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Owner's Manual
Audi TT Coupé
Englisch 09.2014
152.561.8FV.20



1525618FV20

www.audi.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine